



IBM DB2 for i5/OS

XML Extender Administration and Programming

Version 9.1

SC23-7691-00





IBM DB2 for i5/OS

XML Extender Administration and Programming

Version 9.1

SC23-7691-00

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, please read the general information under "Notices" on page 269.

First Edition

This edition applies to IBM DB2 Database Extenders, Version 9.1 for i5/OS, Version 6 Release 1, 5761-DE1, and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions. This edition applies only to reduced instruction set computer (RISC) systems.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1999, 2007. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Tables	vii
-------------------------	------------

About this guide.	ix
------------------------------------	-----------

Who should use this guide	ix
How to get a current version of this guide	ix
How to use this guide	ix
Highlighting conventions	x
How to read syntax diagrams	x

Part 1. Introduction 1

Chapter 1. Introduction 3

Introduction to XML Extender	3
XML Documents	3
How XML data is handled in DB2	4
Features of XML Extender	5
XML Extender tutorial lessons	6
Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column	7
Lesson: Composing an XML document	17

Part 2. Administration 33

Chapter 2. Administration 35

Administration tools for XML Extender	35
Administration—details	35
The XML operating environment on iSeries.	35
Preparing to administer XML Extender	36
Migrating XML Extender from previous versions or releases.	37
Setting up XML Extender samples and the development environment for iSeries.	39
Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples	40
Setting up administration tools for iSeries	40
Setting up the tutorial environment for iSeries.	42
XML Extender administration overview	42
Access and storage methods.	42
When to use the XML column method	44
When to use the XML collection method	44
Planning for XML columns	44
Planning for XML collections	46
Validating XML documents automatically	55
Enabling a database for XML	55
Creating an XML table.	56
Storing a DTD in the repository table.	57
Enabling XML columns	58
Planning side tables	61
Indexing side tables	62
Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping	63
Composing XML collections by using RDB_node mapping	66

Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB_node mapping	70
---	----

Part 3. Programming 75

Chapter 3. XML columns 77

Managing data in XML columns	77
XML columns as a storage and access method.	77
Defining and enabling an XML column	78
Using indexes for XML column data	79
Storing XML data	80
Default casting functions for storing XML data	81
Storage UDFs for storing XML data	81
Method for retrieving an XML document	82
Retrieving an entire XML document	83
Retrieving element contents and attribute values from XML documents	85
Updating XML data	86
Updating an entire XML document	87
Updating specific elements and attributes of an XML document	87
Methods for searching XML documents	88
Searching the XML document by structure	88
Deleting XML documents.	90
Limitations when invoking functions from Java Database (JDBC).	90

Chapter 4. Managing data in XML collections 93

XML collections as a storage and access method	93
Managing data in XML collections.	94
Preparing to compose XML documents from DB2 data	94
Decomposing XML documents into DB2 database data	98
Enabling an XML collection for decomposition	102
Decomposition table size limits	102
Updating and deleting data in XML collections	103
Updating data in an XML collection.	103
Deleting an XML document from an XML collection.	104
Searching XML collections	104
Composing XML documents using search criteria	105
Searching for decomposed XML data	106
Mapping schemes for XML collections	106
Requirements for using SQL mapping	108
Requirements for RDB_Node mapping	110
Stylesheets for an XML collection.	113
Location paths	113
Location path syntax	114
Enabling XML collections	116
Disabling XML collections	117
Default schema.	118

Chapter 5. XML schemas 121

Advantages of using XML schemas instead of DTDs 121
XML schema complexType element 121
XML schema simpleType element 122
Element declarations in XML schemas 123
Attributes in XML schemas 123
Examples of an XML schema 123
 XML document instance using the schema 124
 XML document instance using a DTD 124

Chapter 6. The dxxadm administration command 127

dxxadm command overview 127
Syntax of the dxxadm administration command 127
administration command 127
 enable_db option of the dxxadm command 128
 disable_db option of the dxxadm command 128
 enable_column option of the dxxadm command 129
 disable_column option of the dxxadm command 130
 enable_collection option of the dxxadm command 131
 disable_collection option of the dxxadm command 132

Part 4. Reference 135

Chapter 7. XML Extender user-defined types 137

Chapter 8. XML Extender user-defined functions 139

Types of XML Extender user-defined functions 139
UDT and UDF names for XML Extender 140
Storage functions 140
 Storage functions in XML Extender overview 140
 XMLCLOBFromFile() function 140
 XMLFileFromCLOB() function 141
 XMLFileFromVarchar() function 141
 XMLVarcharFromFile() function 142
Retrieval functions 143
 Retrieval functions in XML Extender 143
 Content(): retrieve from XMLFILE to a CLOB 144
 Content(): retrieve from XMLVARCHAR to an external server file 145
 Content(): retrieval from XMLCLOB to an external server file 146
Extraction functions 147
 Extracting functions in XML Extender 147
 extractInteger() and extractIntegers(). 148
 extractSmallint() and extractSmallints(). 149
 extractDouble() and extractDoubles(). 150
 extractReal() and extractReals(). 151
 extractChar() and extractChars(). 152
 extractVarchar() and extractVarchars(). 153
 extractCLOB() and extractCLOBs(). 154
 extractDate() and extractDates(). 155
 extractTime() and extractTimes(). 157
 extractTimestamp() and extractTimestamps(). 158

Update functions in XML Extender 159
 How the Update() function processes the XML document 162
generate_unique() function 164
Validation functions 164
 SVALIDATE() function 164
 DVALIDATE() function 166

Chapter 9. Document access definition (DAD) files 169

Creating a DAD file for XML columns 169
DAD files for XML collections 171
 SQL composition 173
 RDB node composition 173
 Composition from rows that have null values 174
DTD for the DAD file 174
Dynamically overriding values in the DAD file 179

Chapter 10. XML Extender stored procedures 187

XML Extender stored procedures - Overview 187
Calling XML Extender stored procedures 187
XML Extender administration stored procedures 188
 XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview 188
 dxxEnableDB() stored procedure 188
 dxxDisableDB() stored procedure 189
 dxxEnableColumn() stored procedure 190
 dxxDisableColumn() stored procedure 191
 dxxEnableCollection() stored procedure 192
 dxxDisableCollection() stored procedure 192
XML Extender composition stored procedures 193
 XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview 193
 dxxGenXML() stored procedure 193
 dxxRetrieveXML() stored procedure 197
 dxxGenXMLClob stored procedure 200
 dxxRetrieveXMLClob stored procedure 202
XML Extender decomposition stored procedures 204
 XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview 204
 dxxShredXML() stored procedure 204
 dxxInsertXML() stored procedure 206

Chapter 11. Extensible stylesheet language transformation (XSLT) 209

Creating an HTML document using an XSLT stylesheet 209
XSLTransformToClob() user-defined function 210
XSLTransformToFile() user-defined function 211

Chapter 12. XML Extender administration support tables 215

DTD reference table 215
XML usage table (XML_USAGE) 215

Chapter 13. Troubleshooting 217

Troubleshooting XML Extender 217
Starting the trace for XML Extender 217

Stopping the trace	218
XML Extender UDF return codes	219
XML Extender stored procedure return codes.	219
SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers for XML Extender	219
XML Extender messages.	224

Part 5. Appendixes 239

Appendix A. Samples 241

XML DTD sample	241
XML document sample: getstart.xml.	241
Stylesheet sample: getstart.xsl	242
Document access definition files	243
Sample DAD file: XML column	244
Sample DAD file: XML collection: SQL mapping	244
Sample DAD file: XML: RDB_node mapping	246

Appendix B. Code page considerations 249

Configuring locale settings	249
Encoding declaration considerations for XML Extender	249
Consistent encodings and encoding declarations	249
Declaring an encoding	250
Recommendations for preventing inconsistent XML documents	250

Appendix C. XML Extender limits . . . 251

XML Extender glossary 255

Index 263

Notices 269

Trademarks	271
----------------------	-----

Tables

1.	SALES_TAB table	8	37.	extractReal function parameters	151
2.	List of the XML collection lesson samples	8	38.	extractChar function parameters	152
3.	Elements and attributes to be searched	9	39.	extractVarchar function parameters	153
4.	Side-table columns to be indexed	15	40.	extractCLOB function parameters	155
5.	List of the XML collection lesson samples	21	41.	extractDate function parameters	156
6.	XML Extender stored procedures and commands	36	42.	extractTime function parameters	157
7.	DXXSAMPLES library objects	40	43.	extractTimestamp function parameters	158
8.	The XML Extender UDTs	45	44.	The UDF Update parameters	159
9.	Elements and attributes to be searched	45	45.	XML documents before and after an update	160
10.	The column definitions for the DTD repository table	58	46.	Update function rules	162
11.	The XML Extender storage functions	80	47.	The SVALIDATE parameters	165
12.	The XML Extender default casting functions	81	48.	The DVALIDATE parameters	166
13.	The XML Extender storage UDFs	81	49.	Department Table	183
14.	The XML Extender retrieval functions	83	50.	Employee Table	183
15.	The XML Extender default cast functions	83	51.	dxxEnableDB() parameters	189
16.	The XML Extender extracting functions	86	52.	dxxDisableDB() parameters	189
17.	Simple location path syntax	115	53.	dxxEnableColumn() parameters	190
18.	The XML Extender's restrictions using location path	116	54.	dxxDisableColumn() parameters	191
19.	dxxadm parameters	127	55.	dxxEnableCollection() parameters	192
20.	enable_db parameters	128	56.	dxxDisableCollection() parameters	193
21.	disable_db parameters	129	57.	dxxGenXML() parameters	194
22.	enable_column parameters	130	58.	dxxRetrieveXML() parameters	197
23.	disable_column parameters	131	59.	dxxGenXMLClob parameters	200
24.	enable_collection parameters	131	60.	dxxRetrieveXMLClob parameters	203
25.	disable_collection parameters	132	61.	dxxShredXML() parameters	204
26.	The XML Extender UDTs	137	62.	dxxInsertXML() parameters	206
27.	XMLCLOBFromFile parameter	140	63.	XSLTransformToFile() parameter descriptions	211
28.	XMLFileFromCLOB() parameters	141	64.	DTD_REF table	215
29.	XMLFileFromVarchar parameters	142	65.	XML_USAGE table	216
30.	XMLVarcharFromFile parameter	143	66.	Trace parameters	218
31.	XMLFILE to a CLOB parameter	144	67.	Trace parameters	218
32.	XMLVarchar to external server file parameters	145	68.	SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers	219
33.	XMLCLOB to external server file parameters	146	69.	Limits for XML Extender objects	251
34.	extractInteger function parameters	148	70.	Limits for user-defined function value	251
35.	extractSmallint function parameters	149	71.	Limits for stored procedure parameters	252
36.	extractDouble function parameters	150	72.	XML Extender limits	252
			73.	Limits for XML Extender composition and decomposition	252

About this guide

This section contains the following information:

- “Who should use this guide”
- “How to use this guide”
- “Highlighting conventions” on page x

Who should use this guide

This guide is intended for the following people:

- Those who work with XML data in DB2® applications and who are familiar with XML concepts. Readers of this document should have a general understanding of XML and DB2. To learn more about XML, see the following Web site:

<http://www.w3.org/XML>

To learn more about DB2, see the following Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/library>

- DB2 database administrators who are familiar with DB2 database administration concepts, tools, and techniques.
- DB2 application programmers who are familiar with SQL and with one or more programming languages that can be used for DB2 applications.

How to get a current version of this guide

You can get the latest version of this guide at the XML Extender Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/extenders/xmlxt/library.html>

How to use this guide

This guide is structured as follows:

Part 1. Introduction

This part provides an overview of the XML Extender and how you can use it in your business applications. It contains a getting-started scenario that helps you get up and running.

Part 2. Administration

This part describes how to prepare and maintain a DB2 database for XML data. Read this part if you need to administer a DB2 database that contains XML data.

Part 3. Programming

This part describes how to manage your XML data. Read this part if you need to access and manipulate XML data in a DB2 database application program.

Part 4. Reference

This part describes how to use the XML Extender administration commands, user-defined types, user-defined functions, and stored procedures. It also lists the messages and codes that the XML Extender issues. Read this part if you are familiar with the XML Extender concepts

and tasks, but you need information about a user-defined type (UDT), user-defined function (UDF), command, message, metadata tables, control tables, or code.

Part 5. Appendixes

The appendixes describe the DTD for the document access definition, samples, and XML Extender limits.

Highlighting conventions

This guide uses the following conventions:

Bold text indicates:

- Commands
- Field names
- Menu names
- Push buttons

Italic text indicates

- Variable parameters that are to be replaced with a value
- Emphasized words
- First use of a glossary term

Uppercase letters indicate:

- Data types
- Column names
- Table names

Example text indicates:

- System messages
- Values that you type
- Coding examples
- Directory names
- File names

How to read syntax diagrams

Throughout this book, the syntax of commands and SQL statements is described using syntax diagrams.

Read the syntax diagrams as follows:

- Read the syntax diagrams from left to right, from top to bottom, following the path of the line.

The ►— symbol indicates the beginning of a statement.

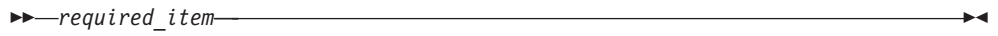
The —> symbol indicates that the statement syntax is continued on the next line.

The ►— symbol indicates that a statement is continued from the previous line.

The —>< symbol indicates the end of a statement.

Diagrams of syntactical units other than complete statements start with the ►— symbol and end with the —> symbol.

- Required items appear on the horizontal line (the main path).



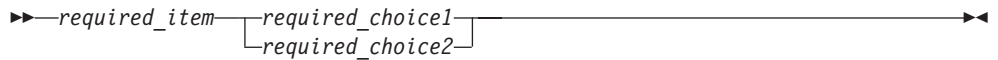
- Optional items appear below the main path.



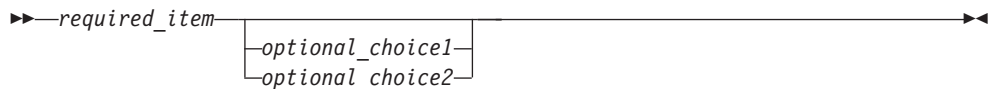
If an optional item appears above the main path, that item has no effect on the execution of the statement and is used only for readability.



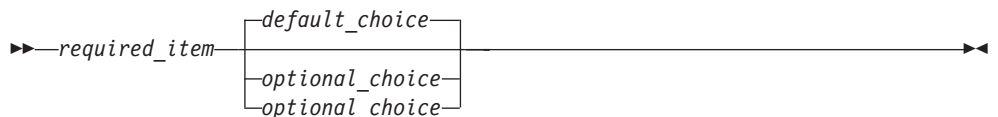
- If you can choose from two or more items, they appear vertically, in a stack. If you *must* choose one of the items, one item of the stack appears on the main path.



If choosing one of the items is optional, the entire stack appears below the main path.



If one of the items is the default, it appears above the main path and the remaining choices are shown below.



- An arrow returning to the left, above the main line, indicates that an item that can be repeated.



- If the repeat arrow contains punctuation, you must separate repeated items with the specified punctuation.



- A repeat arrow above a stack indicates that you can repeat the items in the stack.
 - Keywords appear in uppercase (for example, FROM). In the XML Extender, keywords can be used in any case. Terms that are not keywords appear in lowercase letters (for example, column-name). They represent user-supplied names or values.
 - If punctuation marks, parentheses, arithmetic operators, or other such symbols are shown, you must enter them as part of the syntax.

Part 1. Introduction

This part provides an overview of the XML Extender and how you can use it in your business applications.

Chapter 1. Introduction

Introduction to XML Extender

DB2[®] XML Extender provides the ability to store and access XML documents, to generate XML documents from existing relational data, and to insert rows into relational tables from XML documents. XML Extender provides new data types, functions, and stored procedures to manage your XML data in DB2 Relational Databases (referred to as “RDB databases” or simply “databases” in this book).

XML Extender is available for the following platforms. See the DB2 installation requirements to determine which operating system levels are supported.

- Windows Server on an Intel 32-bit platform
- AIX[®] on a 32-bit platform for XML Extender client functions
- AIX[®] on a 64-bit platform
- Solaris[™] Operating Environment on a 32-bit platform for XML Extender client functions
- Solaris[™] Operating Environment on a 64-bit platform
- Linux on a 32-bit platform with x86 architecture
- Linux on a 64-bit platform with x86 architecture
- HP-UX on a PA-RISC 32-bit platform for XML Extender client functions
- HP-UX on a PA-RISC 64-bit platform
- z/OS[™]
- i5/OS[™]

Related concepts:

- “XML Extender tutorial lessons” on page 6
- “Features of XML Extender” on page 5
- “Lesson: Composing an XML document” on page 17
- “Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column” on page 7
- “XML Documents”

XML Documents

Because companies tend to share data between different applications, companies are continually faced with the problem of replicating, transforming, exporting, or saving their data in formats that can be imported into other applications. Many of these transforming processes tend to drop some of the data, or they at least require that users go through the tedious process of ensuring that the data remains consistent. This manual checking consumes both time and money.

One of the ways to address this problem is for application developers to write *Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)* applications, a standard application programming interface (API) for accessing data in both relational and non-relational database management systems. These applications save the data in a database management system. From there, the data can be manipulated and presented in the form in which it is needed for another application. Database applications must be written to convert the data into a form that an application

requires. Applications change quickly and quickly become obsolete. Applications that convert data to HTML provide presentation solutions, but the data presented cannot be practically used for other purposes. A method that separates the data from its presentation is needed to provide a practical form of interchange between applications.

XML—*eXtensible Markup Language*—addresses this problem. XML is extensible because the language is a meta-language that allows you to create your own language based on the needs of your enterprise. You use XML to capture not only the data for your particular application, but also the data structure. Although it is not the only data interchange format, XML has emerged as the accepted standard. By adhering to this standard, applications can share data without first transforming it using proprietary formats.

Because XML is now the accepted standard for data interchange, many applications are emerging that will be able to take advantage of it.

Suppose that you are using a particular project management application and you want to share some of its data with your calendar application. Your project management application could export tasks in XML, which could then be imported as-is into your calendar application. In today's interconnected world, application providers have strong incentives to make an XML interchange format a basic feature of their applications.

How XML data is handled in DB2

Although XML solves many problems by providing a standard format for data interchange, some challenges remain. When building an enterprise data application, you must answer questions such as:

- How often do I want to replicate the data?
- What kind of information must be shared between applications?
- How can I quickly search for the information I need?
- How can I make a particular action, such as a new entry being added, trigger an automatic data interchange between all of my applications?

These kinds of issues can be addressed only by a database management system. By incorporating the XML information and meta-information directly in the database, you can more efficiently obtain the XML results that your other applications need. With the XML Extender, you can take advantage of the power of DB2® in many XML applications.

With the content of your structured XML documents in a DB2 database, you can combine structured XML information with traditional relational data. Based on the application, you can choose whether to store entire XML documents in DB2 in user-defined types provided for XML data (XML data types), or you can map the XML content as base data types in relational tables. For XML data types, XML Extender adds the power to search rich data types of XML element or attribute values, in addition to the structural text search that the Net Search Extender provides.

XML Extender provides two methods of storing and access for XML data in DB2:

XML column method

Stores entire XML documents as column data or externally as a file, and extracts the required XML element or attribute value and stores it in *side tables*, which are indexed tables for high-speed searching. By storing the documents as column data, you can:

- Perform fast search on XML elements or attributes that have been extracted and stored in side tables as SQL basic data types and indexed.
- Update the content of an XML element or the value of an XML attribute.
- Extract XML elements or attributes dynamically using SQL queries.
- Validate XML documents when they are inserted and updated.
- Perform structural-text search with the Net Search Extender.

XML collection method

Composes and decomposes contents of XML documents with one or more relational tables.

Features of XML Extender

XML Extender provides the following features to help you manage and exploit XML data with DB2®:

- Administration resources to help you manage the integration of XML data in relational tables
- Storage and access methods for XML data within the database
- A data type definition (DTD) repository for you to store DTDs
- The ability to validate XML documents using a DTD or schema
- A mapping file called the Document Access Definition (DAD), which is used to map XML documents to relational data
- Location paths to specify the location of an element or attribute within an XML document

Administration resources: The XML Extender administration resources help you enable your database and table columns for XML, and map XML data to DB2 relational structures.

You can use the following resources to complete administration tasks for the XML Extender:

- The **dxadm** command can be run from the OS command line.
- Stored procedures can be run from the iSeries Navigator.
- The XML Extender administration stored procedures allow you to invoke administration commands from a program.

Storage and access methods: XML Extender provides two storage and access methods for integrating XML documents with DB2 data structures: XML column and XML collection. These methods have very different uses, but can be used in the same application.

XML column method

This method helps you store intact XML documents in DB2. The XML column method works well for archiving documents. The documents are inserted into columns enabled for XML and can be updated, retrieved, and searched. Element and attribute data can be mapped to DB2 tables (side tables), which can be indexed for fast searches.

XML collection method

This method helps you map XML document structures to DB2 tables so that you can either compose XML documents from existing DB2 data, or decompose XML documents, storing the untagged data in DB2 tables. This method is good for data interchange applications, particularly when the contents of XML documents are frequently updated.

DTDs:The XML Extender also allows you to store DTDs, the set of declarations for XML elements and attributes. When a database is *enabled* for XML, a DTD repository table (DTD_REF) is created. Each row of this table represents a DTD with additional metadata information. Users can access this table to insert their own DTDs. The DTDs are used for validating the structure of XML documents.

DAD files: You specify how structured XML documents are to be processed by XML Extender using a *document access definition (DAD)* file. The DAD file is an XML document that maps the XML document structure to a DB2 table. You use a DAD file when storing XML documents in a column, or when composing or decomposing XML data. The DAD file specifies whether you are storing documents using the XML column method, or defining an XML collection for composition or decomposition.

Related concepts:

- “XML Extender tutorial lessons”
- “Lesson: Composing an XML document” on page 17
- “Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column” on page 7
- “How XML data is handled in DB2” on page 4

XML Extender tutorial lessons

This tutorial shows you how to get started using XML Extender to access and modify XML data for your applications. Three lessons are provided:

- Storing an XML document in an XML column
- Composing an XML document
- Cleaning up the database

By following the tutorial lessons, you can set up a database using provided sample data, map SQL data to an XML document, store XML documents in the database, and then search and extract data from the XML documents.

In the lessons, you will use XML Extender administration commands, UDFs, and stored procedures. Most of the examples in the rest of the guide draw on the sample data that is used in this section.

In these lessons, you work for ACME Auto Direct, a company that distributes cars and trucks to automotive dealerships. You have two tasks. First you will set up a system in which orders can be archived in the SALES_DB database for querying by the sales department. Next, you extract information in an existing purchase order database, SALES_DB.

Prerequisites

To complete the lessons in this tutorial, you must have the following prerequisites installed:

- DB2 Database™

- Optional: iSeries Navigator to run lesson samples

In addition, you must set up the administration environment. You can use the following environments to complete the Getting Started lessons:

- iSeries Navigator
- OS command line

To use these environments, you must:

1. Restore the sample source code to the samples library. Use the steps in “Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files” on page 39.
2. Restore the XML sample files and the Getting Started executable to an IFS directory. Use the steps in “Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files” on page 39.
3. Create an SQL Schema (collection). Use the steps in “Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples” on page 40.
4. Set up the environment from which you will complete the administration tasks.
 - When using the iSeries Navigator - “Setting up the iSeries Navigator interface” on page 41
 - When using the OS command line - “Preparing the sample programs for the iSeries command line” on page 42

Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column

The XML Extender provides a method of storing and accessing whole XML documents in the schema. The XML column method enables you to store the document using the XML file types, index the column in side tables, and then query or search the XML document. This storage method is particularly useful for archival applications in which documents are not frequently updated.

This lesson shows you how to use the XML column storage and access method.

The scenario: You have the task of archiving the sales data for the service department. The sales data that you need to work with is stored in XML documents that use the same DTD.

The service department provided a recommended structure for the XML documents and specified which element data will be queried most frequently. The service department wants the XML documents stored in the SALES_TAB table in the SALES_DB schema and wants to be able to search them quickly. The SALES_TAB table will contain two columns with data about each sale, and a third column will contain the XML document. This column is called ORDER.

To store this XML document in the SALES_TAB table, you will:

1. Store the document as an XMLVARCHAR data type, and determine which XML elements and attributes will be frequently queried.
2. Set up the SALES_DB schema for XML.
3. Create the SALES_TAB table, and enable the ORDER column so that you can store the intact document in DB2®.
4. Insert a DTD for the XML document for validation.

When you enable the column, you will define side tables to be indexed for the structural search of the document in a document access definition (DAD) file, an XML document that specifies the structure of the side tables.

The SALES_TAB table is described in Table 1. The column to be enabled for XML, ORDER, is shown in italics.

Table 1. SALES_TAB table

Column name	Data type
INVOICE_NUM	CHAR(6) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY
SALES_PERSON	VARCHAR(20)
<i>ORDER</i>	XMLVARCHAR

The scripts and samples:

For this tutorial, you use a set of scripts to set up your environment and perform the steps in the lessons. The operating system command line scripts are in the dxsamples library. The Navigator SQL Script Files are in the /dxsamples directory.

Table 2 lists the samples that are provided to complete the getting started tasks.

Table 2. List of the XML collection lesson samples

Lesson description	OS command line scripts	Navigator SQL Script File
Create and fill SALES_DB tables	C_SALESDB	C_SalesDb.sql
Insert the DTD getstart.dtd into the DTD_REF table	INSERTDTD	InsertDTD.sql
Create SALES_TAB for XML column	C_SALESTAB	C_SalesTab.sql
Add the ORDER column to SALES_TAB	ADDORDER	AddOrder.sql
Enable the ORDER column as an XML column	Manual command described in text	EnableCol.sql
Create indexes on side tables	C_INDEX	C_Index.sql
Insert an XML document into the SALES_TAB XML column	INSERTXML	InsertXML.sql
Query the XML document held in the sales_tab XML column through the side tables	Manual command	QueryCol.sql
Removes sample tables and disables column	D_SALESDB and CLEANUPCLL	CleanupCol.sql

Planning how to store the document:

Before you use the XML Extender to store your documents, you need to:

- Understand the XML document structure.
- Determine the XML user-defined type in which you will store the XML document.
- Determine the XML elements and attributes that the service department will frequently search, so that the content of these can be stored in side tables and indexed to improve performance.

The following sections will explain how to make these decisions.

The XML document structure:

The XML document structure for this lesson takes information for a specific order that is structured by the order key as the top level, then customer, part, and shipping information on the next level.

This lesson provides the sample DTD for you to understand and validate the XML document structure.

Determining the XML data type for the XML column:

The XML Extender provides XML user defined types that you can use to define a column to hold XML documents. These data types are:

XMLVARCHAR

Used for documents smaller than 3 kilobytes stored in DB2. The maximum size of XMLVARCHAR documents can be redefined to as large as 32672 bytes.

XMLCLOB

Used for documents larger than 3 kilobytes stored in DB2. The maximum document size is 2 gigabytes.

XMLFILE

Used for documents stored outside DB2.

In this lesson, you will store a small document in DB2, so you will use the XMLVARCHAR data type.

Determining elements and attributes to be searched:

When you understand the XML document structure and the needs of the application, you can determine which elements and attributes will be searched or extracted most frequently. The service department will frequently query the order key, customer name, price, and shipping date of an order, and they will need quick performance for these searches. This information is contained in elements and attributes of the XML document. Table 3 describes the location paths of each element and attribute.

Table 3. Elements and attributes to be searched

Data	Location Path
order key	/Order/@Key
customer name	/Order/Customer/Name
price	/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice
shipping date	/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate

Mapping the XML document to the side tables:

To map your XML documents to a side table, you must create a DAD file for the XML column. The DAD file is used to store the XML document in DB2. It also maps the XML element and attribute contents to DB2 database side tables used for indexing, which improves search performance.

After identifying the elements and attributes to be searched, you determine how they should be organized in the side tables, how many tables to use, and which

columns are in what table. Organize the side tables by putting similar information in the same table. The number of side tables is also determined by whether the location path of any elements can be repeated more than once in the document. For example, in the document, the part element can be repeated multiple times, and therefore, the price and date elements can occur multiple times. Elements that can occur multiple times must each be in their own side tables.

You must also determine what DB2 database base types the element or attribute values should use, which is determined by the format of the data.

- If the data is text, use VARCHAR.
- If the data is an integer, use INTEGER.
- If the data is a date, and you want to do range searches, use DATE.

In this tutorial, the elements and attributes are mapped to either ORDER_SIDE_TAB, PART_SIDE_TAB or, SHIP_SIDE_TAB. The tables below show which table each element or attribute is mapped to.

ORDER_SIDE_TAB

Column name	Data type	Location path	Multiple occurring?
ORDER_KEY	INTEGER	/Order/@Key	No
CUSTOMER	VARCHAR(16)	/Order/Customer/Name	No

PART_SIDE_TAB

Column name	Data type	Location path	Multiple occurring?
PRICE	DECIMAL(10,2)	/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice	Yes

SHIP_SIDE_TAB

Column name	Data type	Location path	Multiple occurring?
DATE	DATE	/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate	Yes

Enabling the database:

To store XML information in the database, you need to enable it for the XML Extender. When you enable a database for XML, XML Extender:

- Creates user-defined types (UDTs), user-defined functions (UDFs), and stored procedures
- Creates and populates control tables with the necessary metadata that the XML Extender requires
- Creates the DB2XML schema and assigns the necessary privileges

To enable the database for XML:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:
Run EnableDB.sql
- **OS command line:** Enter:
CALL PGM(QDBXM/QZXADM) PARM(enable_db *dbname*)
Where *dbname* is the name of your database.

Creating and populating the SALES_DB tables:

To set up the lesson environment, create and populate the SALES_DB tables. These tables contain the tables described in the planning sections.

To create the tables, use one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:

```
Run C_SalesDb.sql
```

- **OS command line:** Enter the following command:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)  
SRCMBR(C_SALESDB) NAMING(*SQL)
```

Enabling the XML column and storing the document:

In this lesson, you will enable a column for XML Extender and store an XML document in the column. For these tasks, you will:

1. Store the DTD in the DTD repository.
2. Create a DAD file for the XML column.
3. Create the SALES_TAB table.
4. Add the column of XML type .
5. Enable the XML column.
6. View the column and side tables.
7. Index the side tables for structural search.
8. Store the XML document.
9. Query the XML document.

Storing the DTD in the DTD repository:

You can use a DTD to validate XML data in an XML column. The XML Extender creates a table in the XML-enabled database, called DTD_REF. The table is known as the DTD repository and is available for you to store DTDs. When you validate XML documents, you must store the DTD in this repository. The DTD for this lesson is in

```
/dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd
```

- **Navigator:** Enter the command

```
Run InsertDTD.sql
```

- **OS command line:** Enter:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)  
SRCMBR(INSERTDTD) NAMING(*SQL)
```

Creating a DAD file for the XML column:

This section explains how you create a DAD file for the XML column. In the DAD file, you specify that the access and storage method you are using is XML column. In the DAD file you define the side tables and columns for indexing.

In the following steps, elements in the DAD are referred to as *tags* and the elements of your XML document structure are referred to as *elements*. To create a DAD file for use with XML column:

1. Open a text editor and name the file `getstart_xcolumn.dad`
2. Create the DAD header, with the XML and the DOCTYPE declarations.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM " /dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd">
```

The DAD file is an XML document. You must include XML declarations. XML tags are case sensitive.

3. Insert start and end (<DAD> and</DAD>) tags for the document. All other tags are located inside these tags.

```
<DAD>
.
.
.
</DAD>
```

4. Insert start and end (<DTDID> and</DTDID>) tags with a DTD ID to specify a DTD if the document will be validated:

```
<dtid> /dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd</dtid>
```

Verify that this string matches the value used as the first parameter value when you insert the DTD in the DTD repository table. For example, the path that you use for the DTDID might be different from the string you inserted in the DTD reference table if you are working on a different system drive.

5. Insert start and end (<validation> and </validation>) tags and a keyword YES or NO to indicate whether you want XML Extender to validate the XML document structure using the DTD that you inserted into the DTD reference table. For example:

```
<validation>YES</validation>
```

The value of <validation> can be in mixed case.

6. Insert start and end (<Xcolumn> and</Xcolumn>) tags to specify that the storage method is XML column.
7. Create side tables. For each side table that you want to create:
 - a. Insert start and end (<table> and </table>) tags for each side table that is to be generated, and specify the name of the side table in double quotation marks using the "name=" attribute as shown here:

```
<Xcolumn>
<table name="order_side_tab">
</table>
<table name="part_side_tab">
</table>
<table name="ship_side_tab">
</table>
</Xcolumn>
```

- b. Inside the table tags, insert a <column> tag for each column that you want the side table to contain. Each column has four attributes: name, type, path, and multi_occurrence:

name Specifies the name of the column that is created in the side table.

type Indicates the data type in the side table for each indexed element or attribute.

path Specifies the location path in the XML document for each element or attribute to be indexed.

multi_occurrence

Indicates whether the element or attribute referred to by the path attribute can occur more than once in the XML document. The possible values for *multi_occurrence* are YES or NO. If the value is

NO, then you can mention more than one column tag in the side table. If the value is *YES*, you can mention only one column in the side table.

```
<Xcolumn>
<table name="order_side_tab">
  <column name="order_key"
    type="integer"
    path="/Order/@Key"
    multi_occurrence="NO"/>
  <column name="customer"
    type="varchar(50)"
    path="/Order/Customer/Name"
    multi_occurrence="NO"/>
</table>
<table name="part_side_tab">
  <column name="price"
    type="decimal(10,2)"
    path="/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice"
    multi_occurrence="YES"/>
</table>
<table name="ship_side_tab">
  <column name="date"
    type="DATE"
    path="/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate"
    multi_occurrence="YES"/>
</table>
</Xcolumn>
```

8. Ensure that you have the necessary end tags:
 - A closing `</Xcolumn>` tag after the last `</table>` tag
 - A closing `</DAD>` tag after the `</Xcolumn>` tag
9. Save the file with the following name:
getstart_xcolumn.dad

You can compare the file that you just created with the sample file, `/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcolumn.dad`. This file is a working copy of the DAD file required to enable the XML column and create the side tables. The sample files contain references to files that use absolute path names. Check the sample files and change these values for your directory paths.

Creating the SALES_TAB table:

In this section you create the SALES_TAB table. Initially, it has two columns with the sale information for the order. The SALES_TAB table is described in Table 1 on page 8.

To create the table:

Enter the following CREATE TABLE statement using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:
Run `C_SalesTab.sql`
- **OS command line:** Enter:
`RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
SRCMBR(C_SALESTAB) NAMING(*SQL)`

Adding the column of XML type:

Add a new column to the SALES_TAB table. This column will contain the intact XML document that you generated earlier and must be of an XML UDT. The XML Extender provides multiple data types. In this lesson, you will store the document as XMLVARCHAR.

To add the column of XML type:

Run the SQL ALTER TABLE statement using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:
Run AddOrder.sql
- **OS command line:** Enter:
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
SRCMBR(ADDORDER) NAMING(*SQL)

Enabling the XML column:

After you create the column of XML type, you enable it for XML Extender. When you enable the column, XML Extender reads the DAD file and creates the side tables. Before enabling the column, you must:

- Determine whether you want to create a default view of the XML column, which contains the XML document joined with the side-table columns. You can specify the default view when you enable the XML column. In this lesson, you will specify a view with the `-v` parameter.
- Determine whether you want to specify a primary key as the *ROOT ID*, the column name of the primary key in the application table and a unique identifier that associates all side tables with the application table. If you do not specify a primary key, XML Extender adds the `DXXROOT_ID` column to the application table, and to the side tables.

The `ROOT_ID` column is used as key to tie the application and side tables together, which allows the XML Extender to automatically update the side tables if the XML document is updated. In this lesson, you will pass the primary key column (`INVOICE_NUM`) with the `-r` parameter. XML Extender then uses the specified column as the `ROOT_ID` and add the column to the side tables.

To enable the column for XML:

Run the `dxxadm enable_column` command, using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:
Run EnableCol.sql
- **OS command line:** Enter:
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(enable_column dbname
Sales_Tab Order
'/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcolumn.dad' '-v'
sales_order_view '-r' invoice_num)
Where *dbname* is the name of your database.

The XML Extender creates the side tables with the `INVOICE_NUM` column and creates the default view.

Important: Do not modify the side tables in any way. Updates to the side tables should only be made through updates to the XML document itself. The XML Extender will automatically update the side tables when you update the XML document in the XML column.

Viewing the column and side tables:

When you enabled the XML column, you created a view of the XML column and side tables. You can use this view when working with the XML column.

To view the XML column and side-table columns:

Submit the following SQL SELECT statement from the DB2 database command line:

```
SELECT * FROM SALES_ORDER_VIEW
```

The view shows the columns in the side tables, as specified in the `getstart_xcolumn.dad` file.

Indexing side tables for structural search:

Creating indexes on side tables allows you to do fast structural searches of the XML document. In this section, you create indexes on key columns in the side tables that were created when you enabled the XML column, ORDER. The service department has specified which columns their employees are likely to query most often. Table 4 describes these columns that you will index.

Table 4. Side-table columns to be indexed

Column	Side table
ORDER_KEY	ORDER_SIDE_TAB
CUSTOMER	ORDER_SIDE_TAB
PRICE	PART_SIDE_TAB
DATE	SHIP_SIDE_TAB

To index the side tables:

Run the following CREATE INDEX SQL commands using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:

```
Run C_Index.sql
```

- **OS command line:** Enter:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)  
SRCMBR(C_INDEX) NAMING(*SQL)
```

Storing the XML document:

Now that you enabled a column that can contain an XML document and indexed the side tables, you can store the document using the functions that the XML Extender provides. When storing data in an XML column, you either use default casting functions or XML Extender UDFs. Because you will be storing an object of the base type VARCHAR in a column of the XML UDT XMLVARCHAR, you will use the default casting function.

To store the XML document:

1. Open the XML document `/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml`. Ensure that the file path in the DOCTYPE matches the DTD ID specified in the DAD and when inserting the DTD in the DTD repository. You can verify they match by querying the `DB2XML.DTD_REF` table and by checking the `DTDID` element in

the DAD file. If you are using a different drive and directory structure than the default, you need to change the path in the DOCTYPE declaration to match your directory structure.

2. Run the SQL INSERT command, using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:

```
Run InsertXML.sql
```

- **OS command line:** Enter:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
          SRCMBR(INSERTXML)NAMING(*SQL)
```

Verify that the tables have been updated. Run the following SELECT statements for the tables from the command line.

```
SELECT * FROM SALES_TAB
SELECT * FROM PART_SIDE_TAB
SELECT * FROM ORDER_SIDE_TAB
SELECT * FROM SHIP_SIDE_TAB
```

Querying the XML document:

You can search the XML document with a direct query against the side tables. In this step, you will search for all orders that have a price over 2500.00.

To query the side tables:

Run the SQL SELECT statement, using one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:

```
Run QueryCol.sql
```

- **DB2 command line:**

Enter:

```
select distinct sales_person from schema.sales_tab S,
               part_side_tab P where price > 2500.00
               and S.invoice_num = P.invoice_num;
```

Where *schema* is the schema name that you created in “Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples” on page 40.

The result set should show the names of the salespeople who sold an item that had a price greater than 2500.00. For Example:

```
SALES_PERSON
```

```
-----
```

```
Sriram Srinivasan
```

You have completed the getting started tutorial for storing XML documents in DB2 database tables.

Related concepts:

- “XML Extender tutorial lessons” on page 6
- “Introduction to XML Extender” on page 3
- “Lesson: Composing an XML document” on page 17

Lesson: Composing an XML document

This lesson teaches you how to compose an XML document from existing DB2[®] data.

The scenario:

You have the task of taking information in an existing purchase order database, SALES_DB, and extracting requested information from it to be stored in XML documents. The service department will then use these XML documents when working with customer requests and complaints. The service department has requested specific data to be included and has provided a recommended structure for the XML documents.

Using existing data, you will compose an XML document, `getstart.xml`, from data in the tables in the SALES_DB database.

To compose an XML document, you will plan and create a DAD file that maps columns from the related tables to an XML document structure that provides a purchase order record. You will create an XML collection and associate the tables with an XML structure and a DTD. You use this DTD to define the structure of the XML document. You can also use it to validate the composed XML document in your applications.

The existing database data for the XML document is described in the following tables. The column names with an asterisk are columns that the service department has requested in the XML document structure.

ORDER_TAB

Column name	Data type
ORDER_KEY *	INTEGER
CUSTOMER	VARCHAR(16)
CUSTOMER_NAME *	VARCHAR(16)
CUSTOMER_EMAIL *	VARCHAR(16)

PART_TAB

Column name	Data type
PART_KEY *	INTEGER
COLOR *	CHAR(6)
QUANTITY *	INTEGER
PRICE *	DECIMAL(10,2)
TAX *	REAL
ORDER_KEY	INTEGER

SHIP_TAB

Column name	Data type
DATE *	DATE
MODE *	CHAR(6)

Column name	Data type
COMMENT	VARCHAR(128)
PART_KEY	INTEGER

Planning:

Before you use the XML Extender to compose your documents, you need to determine the structure of the XML document and how it corresponds to the structure of your database data. This section provides an overview of the XML document structure that the service department requested, and the DTD that you will use to define the structure of the XML document. This section shows how the data in the database columns map to data in the composed XML document.

Determining the document structure:

The XML document structure is driven by the requirements of the people who will use the resulting XML document. In this example, those people are in the service department. The service department needs information about the order. For example, order number, customer, part, and shipping information. You can derive all of the data from the order_tab, part_tab and ship_tab tables.

After you design the document structure, you create a DTD to describe the structure of the XML document. This lesson provides a DTD for you. Using the rules of the DTD and the hierarchical structure of the XML document, you can create a hierarchical map of your data, as shown in Figure 1 on page 19.

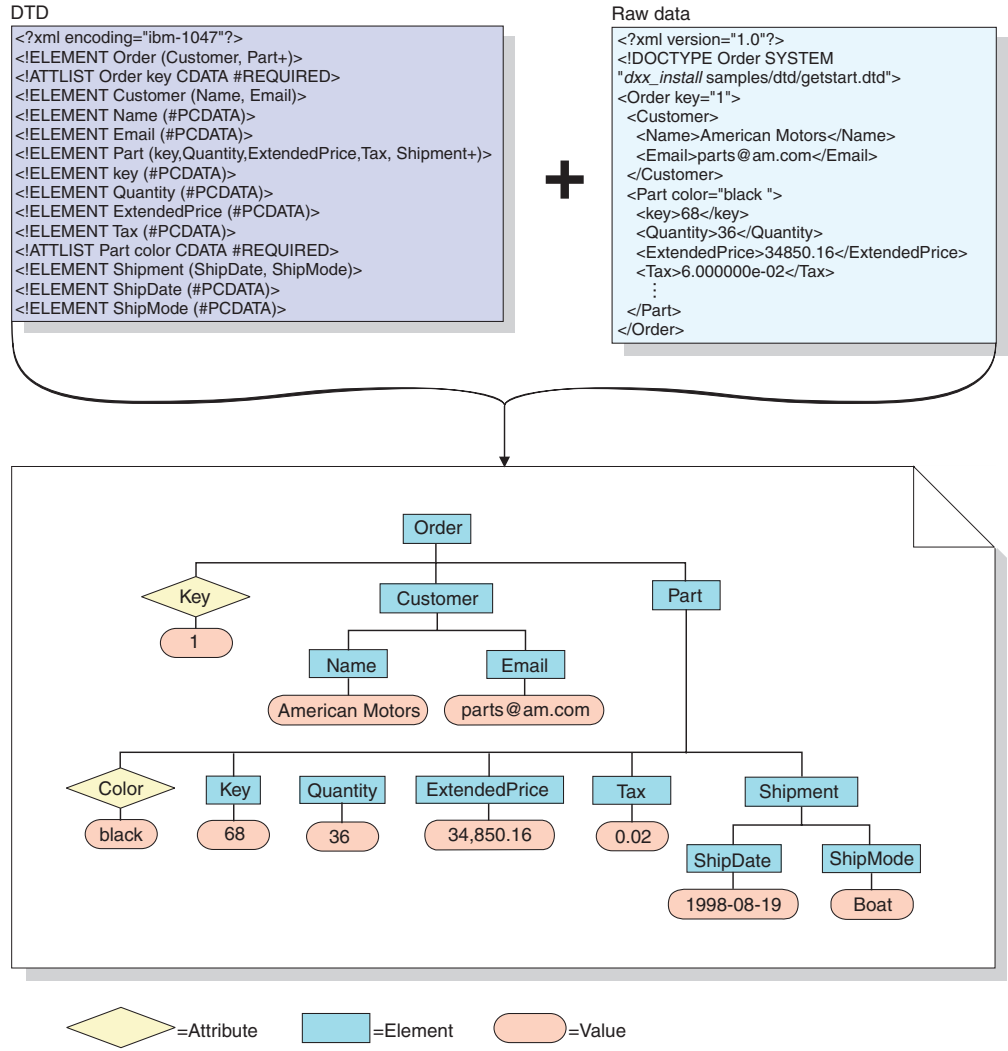


Figure 1. The hierarchical structure of the DTD and XML document

Mapping the XML document and database relationship:

After you design the structure and create the DTD, you need to show how the structure of the document relates to the DB2 database tables that you will use to populate the elements and attributes. You can map the hierarchical structure to specific columns in the relational tables, as shown in Figure 2 on page 20.

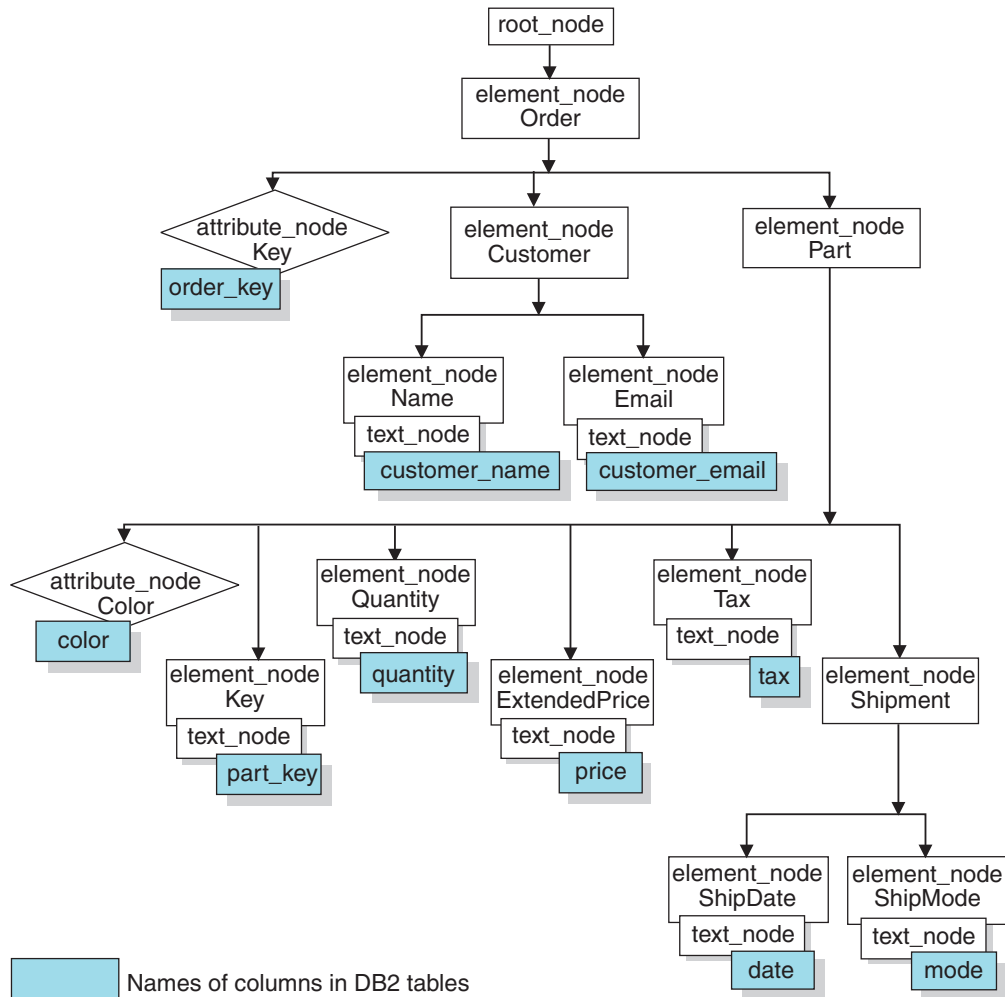


Figure 2. XML document mapped to relational table columns

This figure uses nodes to show elements, attributes, and text within the XML document structure. These nodes are used in the DAD file and are explained more fully in later steps.

Use this relationship description to create a DAD file that define the relationship between the relational data and the XML document structure.

In this tutorial, you will be creating a DAD file for the XML collection used to compose the document. The XML collection DAD file maps the tables with existing data to the XML document structure.

To create the XML collection DAD file, you need to understand how the XML document corresponds to the database structure, as described in Figure 2, so that you can describe from what tables and columns the XML document structure derives data for elements and attributes. You will use this information to create the DAD file for the XML collection.

The scripts and samples:

This lesson provides a set of scripts for you to use to set up your environment. The OS command line scripts are in the dxsamples library. The Navigator SQL Script Files are in the dxsamples directory.

Table 5 lists the samples that are provided to complete the getting started tasks.

Table 5. List of the XML collection lesson samples

Lesson description	OS command line scripts	Navigator SQL Script File
Create and fill SALES_DB tables	C_SALESDB	C_SalesDb.sql
Composes an XML document and returns it to a result table	Manual command	Genxml_sql.sql
Removes sample tables and disables column	D_SALESDB and CLEANUPCOL	CleanupClllec.sql

Setting up the lesson environment:

If you have already completed the first lesson "Store an XML document in an XML column", skip to 21.

Enabling the database:

To generate an XML document from relational data in the database, you must enable the database for XML Extender. When you enable a database for XML, the XML Extender:

- Creates the user-defined types (UDTs), user-defined functions (UDFs), and stored procedures.
- Creates and populates control tables with the necessary metadata that the XML Extender requires.
- Creates the DB2XML schema and assigns the necessary privileges.

Important: If you completed the XML column lesson and did not clean up your environment, you might be able skip this step.

- **Navigator:** Enter the command:

```
Run EnableDB.sql
```

- **OS command line:** Enter:

```
CALL PGM(QDBXM/QZXMADM) PARM(enable_db  
      dbname)
```

Where dbname is the name of your database.

Creating and populating the SALES_DB tables:

To set up the lesson environment, create and populate the SALES_DB tables. These tables contain the tables described in the planning sections.

To create the tables:

- **Navigator:** Run **C_SalesDb.sql**
- **(iSeries) OS command line:** Enter the following command:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)  
          SRCMBR(C_SALESDB) NAMING(*SQL)
```

Creating the DAD file for the XML collection:

Because the data already exists in multiple tables, you will create an XML collection, which associates the tables with the XML document. You define the collection by creating a DAD file.

In this section, you create the mapping scheme in the DAD file that specifies the relationship between the tables and the structure of the XML document.

In the following steps, elements in the DAD are referred to as *tags* and the elements of your XML document structure are referred to as *elements*. A sample of a DAD file similar to the one you will create is in `/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad`.

It has some minor differences from the file generated in the following steps. If you use it for the lesson, note that the file paths might be different than in your environment and you might need to update the sample file.

To create the DAD file for composing an XML document:

1. From the `/dxxsamples/xml` directory, open a text editor and create a file called `getstart_xcollection.dad`.

2. Create the DAD header, using the following text:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "/dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd">
```

3. Insert the `<DAD></DAD>` tags. All other tags are located inside these tags.

4. Specify `<validation></validation>` tags to indicate whether the XML Extender validates the XML document structure. The XML document is validated against a DTD in the DTD repository table. This lesson does not require a DTD and the value is **NO**.

```
<validation>NO</validation>
```

The value of the `<validation>` tags can be mixed case.

5. Use the `<Xcollection></Xcollection>` tags to define the access and storage method as XML collection. The access and storage methods define that the XML data is stored in a collection of DB2 database tables.

```
<Xcollection>
</Xcollection>
```

6. After the `<Xcollection>` tag, provide an SQL statement to specify the tables and columns used for the XML collection. This method is called SQL mapping and is one of two ways to map relational data to the XML document structure. Enter the following statement:

```
<Xcollection>
<SQL_stmt>
    SELECT o.order_key, customer_name, customer_email, p.part_key, color,
           quantity, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode from order_tab o, part_tab p,
           (select db2xml.generate_unique()
            as ship_id, date, mode, part_key from ship_tab) as s
           WHERE o.order_key = 1 and
                  p.price > 20000 and
                  p.order_key = o.order_key and
                  s.part_key = p.part_key
           ORDER BY order_key, part_key, ship_id
</SQL_stmt>
</Xcollection>
```

This SQL statement uses the following guidelines when using SQL mapping. See Figure 2 on page 20 for the document structure.

- Columns are specified in top-down order, by the hierarchy of the XML document structure. For example, the columns for the order and customer elements are first, those for the part element are second, and those for the shipment are third.

- The columns for a repeating section, or nonrepeating section, of the template that requires data from the database are grouped together. Each group has an object ID column: ORDER_KEY, PART_KEY, and SHIP_ID.
 - The object ID column is the first column in each group. For example, O.ORDER_KEY precedes the columns related to the key attribute and p.PART_KEY precedes the columns for the Part element.
 - The SHIP_TAB table does not have a single key conditional column, and therefore, the generate_unique user-defined function is used to generate the SHIP_ID column.
 - The object ID columns are then listed in top-down order in an ORDER BY statement. The columns in ORDER BY are not qualified by any schema and table name, and they match the column names in the SELECT clause.
7. Add the following prolog information to be used in the composed XML document. If you need to specify an encoding value for internationalization, add the ENCODING attribute and value.

```
<prolog?xml version="1.0"?/>
```

This exact text is required for all DAD files.

8. Add the <doctype></doctype> tags to be used in the XML document you are composing. The <doctype> tag contains the path to the DTD stored on the client.
- ```
<doctype!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM
"/dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd">
```
9. Define the root element of the XML document using the <root\_node></root\_node> tags. Inside the root\_node, specify the elements and attributes that make up the XML document.
10. Map the XML document structure to the DB2 database relational table structure using the following three types of nodes:

**element\_node**

Specifies the element in the XML document. Element\_nodes can have child element\_nodes.

**attribute\_node**

Specifies the attribute of an element in the XML document.

**text\_node**

Specifies the text content of the element and the column data in a relational table for bottom-level element\_nodes.

Figure 2 on page 20 shows the hierarchical structure of the XML document and the DB2 database table columns, and indicates what kinds of nodes are used. The shaded boxes indicate the DB2 database table column names from which the data will be extracted to compose the XML document.

To add each type of node, one type at a time:

- a. Define an <element\_node> tag for each element in the XML document.

```
<root_node>
 <element_node name="Order">
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">
 <element_node name="key">
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
</root_node>
```

```

 <element_node name="Quantity">
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
</element_node>
 <element_node name="Tax">
</element_node>
 <element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 </element_node>
 </element_node> <!-- end Shipment -->
</element_node> <!-- end Part -->
</element_node> <!-- end Order -->
</root_node>

```

The <Shipment> child element has an attribute of multi\_occurrence=YES. This attribute is used for elements without an attribute, that are repeated in the document. The <Part> element does not use the multi-occurrence attribute because it has an attribute of color, which makes it unique.

- b. Define an <attribute\_node> tag for each attribute in your XML document. These attributes are nested in the appropriate element\_node. The added attribute\_nodes are highlighted in bold:

```

<root_node>
<element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="key">
</attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">
 <attribute_node name="color">
</attribute_node>
 <element_node name="key">
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Quantity">
 </element_node>

```

...

```

 </element_node> <!-- end Part -->
</element_node> <!-- end Order -->
</root_node>

```

- c. For each bottom-level element\_node, define <text\_node> tags to indicate that the XML element contains character data to be extracted from DB2 database when the document is composed.

```

<root_node>
<element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="key">
</attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 <text_node>
</text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 <text_node>
</text_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">

```

```

<attribute_node name="color">
</attribute_node>
<element_node name="key">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Quantity">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 <text_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
</element_node> <!-- end Shipment -->
</element_node> <!-- end Part -->
</element_node> <!-- end Order -->
</root_node>

```

- d. For each bottom-level `element_node`, define a `<column>` tag. These tags specify from which column to extract data when composing the XML document and are typically inside the `<attribute_node>` or the `<text_node>` tags. The columns defined in the `<column>` tag must be in the `<SQL_stmt>` `SELECT` clause.

```

<root_node>
<element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="key">
 <column name="order_key"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 <text_node>
 <column name="customer_name"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 <text_node>
 <column name="customer_email"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">
 <attribute_node name="color">
 <column name="color"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="key">
 <text_node>
 <column name="part_key"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Quantity">
 <text_node>
 <column name="quantity"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
</root_node>

```

```

</element_node>
<element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 <text_node>
 <column name="price"/>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node>
 <column name="tax"/>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 <text_node>
 <column name="date"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 <text_node>
 <column name="mode"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
</element_node> <!-- end Shipment -->
</element_node> <!-- end Part -->
</element_node> <!-- end Order -->
</root_node>

```

11. Ensure that you have the necessary end tags:

- An ending `</root_node>` tag after the last `</element_node>` tag
- An ending `</Xcollection>` tag after the `</root_node>` tag
- An ending `</DAD>` tag after the `</Xcollection>` tag

12. Save the file as `getstart_xcollection.dad`.

You can compare the file that you created with the sample file `/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad`. This file is a working copy of the DAD file required to compose the XML document. The sample file contains location paths and file path names that might need to be changed to match your environment to be run successfully.

In your application, if you will use an XML collection frequently to compose documents, you can define a collection name by enabling the collection. Enabling the collection registers it in the `XML_USAGE` table and helps improve performance when you specify the collection name (rather than the DAD file name) when running stored procedures. In these lessons, you do not enable the collection.

### Composing the XML document:

In this step, you use the `dxxGenXML()` stored procedure to compose the XML document specified by the DAD file. This stored procedure returns the document as an `XMLVARCHAR` UDT.

To compose the XML document:

Use one of the following methods:

- **Navigator:** Run `Genxml_sql.sql`
- **OS command line:** Enter:

```
CALL DXXSAMPLES/GENX PARM(dbName'/dxxsamples
/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad' result_tab doc ' ')
```

Where *dbName* is the name of your relational database.



**Tip:** This step teaches you how to generate one or more composed XML documents using DB2 database stored procedure's result set feature. Using a result set allows you to fetch multiple rows to generate more than one document. When you generate each document, you can export it to a file. This method is the simplest way to demonstrate using result sets. For more efficient ways of fetching data, see the CLI examples in the DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC source file.

### Transforming an XML document into an HTML file:

To show the data from the XML document in a browser, you must transform the XML document into an HTML file by using a stylesheet and the XSLTransformToFile function.

Use the following steps to transform to an HTML file:

1. Generate a stylesheet using a text editor and name it `getstart.xml`:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
 xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">

 <xsl:template match="/">
 <html>
 <head/>
 <body>

 ...

 </body>
 </html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

2. For each element, create a tag using the following format:

```
<xsl:for-each select="xxxxxx">
```

This tag will be used for transforming instructions. Create a tag for each element of the hierarchy of the XML document. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
 xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">

<xsl:template match="/">
 <html>
 <head/>
 <body>

 <xsl:for-each select="Order">

 <xsl:for-each select="Customer">
 <xsl:for-each select="Name | Email">
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 <xsl:for-each select="Part">
 <xsl:for-each select="key | Quantity | ExtendedPrice | Tax">
 </xsl:for-each>

 <xsl:for-each select="Shipment">
 <xsl:for-each select="ShipDate | ShipMode">
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

```

 </body>
 </html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

3. To format the HTML file, use a list that shows the hierarchy of the XML elements to make the data more readable. Create some additional text elements to describe the data. For example, your stylesheet file might look like this:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
 xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">

<xsl:template match="/">
 <html>
 <head/>
 <body>

 <ol style="list-style:decimal outside">
 <xsl:for-each select="Order">
 Orderkey : <xsl:value-of select="@Key"/

 <xsl:for-each select="Customer">
 Customer

 <xsl:for-each select="Name | Email">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="A">
 <xsl:for-each select="Part">
 Parts

 Color : <xsl:value-of select="@color"/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>

 <xsl:for-each select="key | Quantity | ExtendedPrice | Tax">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="a">
 <xsl:for-each select="Shipment">
 Shipment

 <xsl:for-each select="ShipDate | ShipMode">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>

 </body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

```

 </body>
 </html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

4. Use Xpath to edit the `<xsl:value-of select="xxx">` tags with data from the XML document.

The element tags are `<xsl:value-of select=".">`, where the period (".") is used to get data from normal elements.

The attribute tags are `<xsl:value-of select="@attributname">`, where the ampersand (@) that is added by the attribute name will extract the value of the attribute. You can use the `<xsl:value-of select="name()">` to get the name of the XML tag.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
 xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">

<xsl:template match="/">
 <html>
 <head/>
 <body>

 <ol style="list-style:decimal outside">
 <xsl:for-each select="Order">
 Orderkey : <xsl:value-of select="@Key"/

 <xsl:for-each select="Customer">
 Customer

 <xsl:for-each select="Name | Email">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="A">
 <xsl:for-each select="Part">
 Parts

 Color : <xsl:value-of select="@color"/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>

 <xsl:for-each select="key | Quantity | ExtendedPrice | Tax">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="a">
 <xsl:for-each select="Shipment">
 Shipment

 <xsl:for-each select="ShipDate | ShipMode">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/>
 <xsl:text> : </xsl:text>
 <xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>
 </body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

```


 </xsl:for-each>

</body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

5. Save the stylesheet.
6. Create the HTML file in one of the following ways:

- Use the function XSLTransformToFile:

```

select DB2XML.XSLTransformToFile(CAST(doc AS CLOB(4k)),
 'C:\Program~1\IBM\SQLLIB\samples\db2xml\xslt\getstart.xml',
 0, 'c:\tmp\getstart.html') from xslt_tab

```

The output file can be written only to a file system that is accessible to the DB2 database server.

### **Cleaning up the tutorial environment:**

If you want to clean up the lesson environment, you can run one of the provided scripts or enter the commands from the command line to:

- Disable the XML column, ORDER.
- Drop tables created in the lessons.
- Delete the DTD from the DTD repository table.

You might receive error messages if you have not completed both lessons in this section. You can ignore these errors.

To clean up the tutorial environment:

Run the cleanup command files, using one of the following methods:

#### **Navigator:**

- To clean up the XML column environment, run **CleanupCol.sql**
- To clean up the XML collection environment, run **CleanupClllec.sql**

#### **OS command line:**

- To clean up the XML column environment:
  1. Enter:
 

```

RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
 SRCMBR(D_SALESDB) NAMING(*SQL)

```
  2. Enter:
 

```

CALL PGM(QDBXM/QZXADM)
 PARM(disable_column &DBNAME Sales_Tab Order)

```
  3. Enter:
 

```

RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
 SRCMBR(CLEANUPCOL) NAMING(*SQL)

```
- To clean up the XML collection environment, enter:
 

```

RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT)
 SRCMBR(D_SALESDB) NAMING(*SQL)

```

#### **Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender tutorial lessons” on page 6

- “Introduction to XML Extender” on page 3
- “Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column” on page 7



---

## **Part 2. Administration**

This part describes how to perform administration tasks for the XML Extender.





---

## Chapter 2. Administration

---

### Administration tools for XML Extender

The XML Extender administration tools help you enable your database and table columns for XML, and map XML data to DB2<sup>®</sup> relational structures.

---

### Administration—details

#### The XML operating environment on iSeries

The following sections describe the XML operating environment for iSeries.

##### Application programming

All the XML Extender facilities supplied for application programs run in the iSeries environment as stored procedures or user-defined functions (UDFs). Some of the UDFs that refer to the XML file data type, require access to an IFS system. The DB2 XML trace file, is also written to an IFS file.

Two C header files are provided for developing XML Extender applications. These files contain useful constants for calling the stored procedures and for the definitions of error codes. The header files are available in the following directories, after installation of the product:

- /qibm/proddata/db2extenders/xml/include/dxx.h
- /qibm/proddata/db2extenders/xml/include/dxxrc.h

To develop C++ applications with these headers, use the INCDIR('/qibm/proddata/db2extenders/xml/include') option on the CRTCPMOD iSeries command.

##### Administration environment

When performing administration tasks in the iSeries environment, you use the XML Extender Administration wizard, the Qshell, the Navigator, or the native operating system (OS) command line.

##### Administration wizard

You can use either an Administration wizard from Windows or UNIX client, or an iSeries environment to complete administration tasks.

##### Qshell

You can run the administration command, **dxxadm**, and its options, in the Qshell. The administration command is described in Chapter 6, “The dxxadm administration command,” on page 127, and provide options for managing XML column, XML collection, and databases for the XML Extender.

##### Navigator

You can call administration stored procedures in the Navigator. The administration stored procedures are described in “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188, and provide options for managing XML column, XML collection, and databases for the XML Extender.

##### OS command line

You can run the administration program, QZXMADM, from the OS command line. This program uses the administration command parameters

described in Chapter 6, “The dxadm administration command,” on page 127, and provide options for managing XML column, XML collection, and databases for the XML Extender.

The following table summarizes the administration environment for the XML Extender.

Table 6. XML Extender stored procedures and commands

Environment	Qshell	Navigator	OS Command Line
Sample files	DAD, DTD, and XML files are stored under the <i>dxxsamples</i> directory. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dad/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/xml/*.*</i></li> </ul>	DAD, DTD, and XML files are stored under the <i>dxxsamples</i> directory. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>dxxsamples/getstart.exe</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dad/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/xml/*.*</i></li> </ul>	DAD, DTD, and XML files are stored under the <i>dxxsamples</i> directory. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dtd/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/dad/*.*</i></li> <li><i>dxxsamples/xml/*.*</i></li> </ul>
Program executable files	DXXSAMPLES library, which is pointed to by symbolic links in <i>dxxsamples/*</i> .	DXXSAMPLES library on iSeries; no executables on Windows or UNIX.	DXXSAMPLES library: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sample SQL scripts in the SQLSTMT file</li> <li>Sample CL source in the QCLSRC file</li> <li>Sample C++ source in the QCSRC file</li> </ul>
Command scripts	None	*.SQL files in <i>path/DXXSAMPLES</i>	DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT

## Preparing to administer XML Extender

To run XML Extender, you need to install the following software.

### Required software for i5/OS™:

- DB2 Database™ Version 6 Release 1
- iSeries International components for unicode (option 39 of 5722SS1) QICU
- iSeries System Openness Includes (option 13 of 5722SS1) QSYSINC
- iSeries Portable App Solutions Environment (option 33 of 5722SS1) QPASE (needed for compiles)
- WebSphere® Development ToolSet (options 51, 52 of 5722WDS) ILE-C, ILE-C++ family
- XML Toolkit for iSeries (5733XT2)
- You might also need 5722JV1 if you plan to develop applications that use Java™ or Web-based applications.

### Optional software:

- For structural text search, the DB2 Database Net Search Extender Version 9.5, which is available with DB2 Database (options 1 and 3 of 5761DE1)
- For XML Extender administration wizard:
  - DB2 Database Java Database Connectivity (JDBC)

## Migrating XML Extender from previous versions or releases

If you have been using an earlier version of XML Extender, you must migrate a database that is enabled for XML Extender before using an existing XML-enabled database with XML Extender Version 9.1.

Before you install IBM DB2 XML Extender Version 9.1, apply the most recent Version 8.2 PTF, and follow the migration instructions contained in the PTF cover letter.

### Procedure:

To automatically migrate an XML enabled database and XML enabled columns:

1. Install DB2 Version 9.1.
2. Install the latest PTFs
3. From the operating system command line, enter:  

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMMIGV
```

Failing to do the migration step can cause problems and unpredictable results such as failure while disabling databases and inability to access new UDFs.

### IASP considerations

For an iSeries system, an independent auxiliary storage pool (IASP) device can be used as an external database. This IASP can be enabled for XML Extender. Consider the following when enabling an IASP database for XML extender:

- You can enable your \*SYSBAS database or a database on an IASP for XML extender.
- You can enable more than one IASP database for XML extender, but you can only have one active IASP database at a time.
- If you have enabled the \*SYSBAS database for XML extender, you will not be able to enable an IASP database.

### Migrating XML Extender data from SYSBAS to an IASP

To move your XML data from SYSBAS to an IASP, detailed planning is required.

Different Save/Restore steps will be required for:

- XML collection database files
- database files with XML user-defined types (UDTs)
- XML column database files

To migrate to an IASP:

1. Save your XML data using the steps described in “Saving and restoring for XML columns and XML collections” on page 38.
2. Disable all XML columns.
3. Disable all XML collections.
4. Drop all schemas that contain XML data (the data that you saved in step 1.)
5. Drop all columns that were defined with XML Extender UDTs.
6. Disable the SYSBAS database for XML Extender.
7. Sign off.
8. Sign on.
9. Execute the SETASPGRP to the IASP group.
10. Enable the IASP database for XML Extender.

11. Restore your XML data using the directions in “Saving and restoring for XML columns and XML collections.”

### **Saving and restoring for XML columns and XML collections**

On the i5/OS, save and restore procedures for schemas have the following restrictions:

- Do not save, restore, or delete the DB2XML schema (library).
- The following conditions apply when you restore user-created schemas that contain database files used by XML Extender:
  - Schemas that contain XML collections, but do not contain XML-enabled columns, can be restored at the library level using SAVLIB and RSTLIB commands, provided the database on the new system has been enabled for XML Extender. If the XML collection was enabled on the old system, you must re-enable the XML collection on the new system.
  - Schemas that contain columns of XML user-defined types (XMLCLOB, XMLVarchar, etc.) can be restored at the library level, provided that the column has not been enabled for XML and the database on the new system has been enabled for XML Extender.
  - Schemas that contain columns that have been enabled for XML cannot be restored at the library level. The base table and the side tables (database files) can be restored at the object level using the RSTOBJ command.

The following procedures tell you how to restore schemas with database files that are used with XML collections and XML columns.

To restore XML collection database files:

1. Enable the database on the target system for XML Extender.
2. Restore the XML collection database files using RSTLIB.
3. If the XML collection was enabled on the original system, run the enable\_collection command to enable the XML collection on the target system.

To restore database files with XML user-defined types:

1. Enable the database on the target system for XML Extender.
2. Restore the database files using the RSTLIB command.

To restore XML column database files:

1. Enable the database on the target system for XML Extender.
2. Restore the base table, using the RSTOBJ command.
3. Remove any old triggers that were defined in the base table using the RMVPFTRG command.
4. Enable the XML column on the target system. You must use the '-r' parameter to identify the primary key of the base table if the '-r' parameter was used to enable the base table on the previous system.
5. Add user-defined triggers to the base table using the ADDPFTRG command, and restore those programs on the target system.
6. Restore the data to the side tables using the RSTOBJ command.

**Restrictions:** You cannot restore database files with RSTLIB when they contain XML-enabled columns for the following reasons:

- Important metadata that is stored in the XML Extender is not restored to the new system when you restore your library and database files. This metadata can only be created on the target system by running the enable\_column command.

- When you restore your library with RSTLIB, SQL triggers in your library will be unusable because the prerequisite metadata will be missing from the XML Extender. The presence of these triggers will prevent you from running the enable\_column command.

## Setting up XML Extender samples and the development environment for iSeries

The following sections describe how to set up the administration environment, depending on the approach you plan to use for your application

- For all environments - “Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files”
- For all environments - “Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples” on page 40
- For the administration environment of your choice:
  - When using the wizard - “Setting up the Wizard” on page 41
  - When using the Qshell command line - “Setting up the Qshell” on page 41
  - When using the Navigator - “Setting up the iSeries Navigator interface” on page 41
  - When using the OS command line - “Preparing the sample programs for the iSeries command line” on page 42
- To run the getting started lessons - “Setting up the tutorial environment for iSeries” on page 42

### Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files

The samples are shipped as two iSeries Save File objects in the product directory. These files are:

#### QDBXM/QZXMSAMP1

Contains a SAVLIB save file for the DXXSAMPLES library. The library contains sample C and CL source code, C header files, and SQL statements for application development.

#### QDBXM/QZXMSAMP2

Contains a SAV save file of an IFS directory tree that will contain sample XML, DTD, and Data Access Definition (DAD) files, and a self-extracting GetStart.exe file to be used with the Navigator.

The first step in preparing to use the administration environment is to have the iSeries administrator unpack and restore these save files to your system.

The administrator should:

- Unpack QDBXM/QZXMSAMP1 Save File to restore Samples source code and SETUP program to your system.

From the OS command line, enter:

```
RSTLIB SAVLIB(DXXSAMPLES)
DEV(*SAVF)
SAVF(QDBXM/QZXMSAMP1)
```

The RSTLIB command unpacks the save file in the DXXSAMPLES library and it contains the objects listed in Table 7 on page 40:

Table 7. DXXSAMPLES library objects

Object	Type	Attribute	Description
SETUP	PGM	CLP	Compiles sample programs and Add IFS
H	FILE	PF-SRC	C Header files
QCLSRC	FILE	PF-SRC	Interface for Navigator
QCSRC	FILE	PF-SRC	Sample programs
SQLSTMT	FILE	PF-SRC	SQL statements for samples

- Unpack QDBXM/QZXMSAMP2 Save File to restore XML files and GetStart.exe to the user's system.

From the OS command line, enter:

```
RST DEV('/qsys.lib/qdbxm.lib/qzxmsamp2.file')
 OBJ('/QIBM/UserData/DB2Extenders/XML/Samples')
```

The RST DEV command restores the save file to the XML files to the IFS directory, /QIBM/UserData/DB2Extenders/XML/Samples.

A symbolic link, /dxxsamples, is created during the samples set up, and points to IFS directory, /QIBM/UserData/DB2Extenders/XML/Samples. The term *dxxsamples* used throughout this book refers to either of these values.

## Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples

You need to have a schema to run the samples because a set of stored procedures and tables with sample data will be created in this schema.

When creating an SQL schema, it is recommended that the name of the schema the user ID that you will use while running the samples because of default schema rules in SQL.

If you already have an SQL schema matching this user ID, you do not need to create a new schema.

### To create the schema:

1. From the OS command line, open an SQL session by entering:

```
STRSQL
```

2. From the SQL session, enter:

```
CREATE SCHEMA UserId
```

Where *UserId* is user ID that you use when you run the samples.

## Setting up administration tools for iSeries

The tools you can use for administration tools were described in “Administration environment” on page 35. You can choose any of these environments to perform the administration tasks. Some of these environments require set up to be used with the XML Extender administration commands, the stored procedures, and the samples. The following sections describe the set up requirements.

## Setting up the Wizard

See the XML Extender Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/extenders/xmlext/downloads.html>

## Setting up the Qshell

No set up required, except for installation of the Qshell option.

## Setting up the iSeries Navigator interface

You can use the iSeries Navigator to run administration commands, SQL statements, stored procedures, and to complete the Getting Started lessons. If you plan to use the iSeries Navigator, complete the following steps to download and build the sample programs. Building the sample programs prepares the environment for running the administration stored procedures and is required.

1. Download and unpack the GetStart.exe file.
  - a. Create a directory on the Windows operating system, called *path/dxxsamples*. *path* is the drive and directory under which the *dxxsamples* directory is to be located.
  - b. From a Windows command line, enter:  

```
FTP SystemId
```

Where *SystemId* is the host name of the iSeries system where you have restored the save file to the *dxxsamples* directory.  
Enter the requested user ID and password.
  - c. Enter the following FTP command to change to binary mode: Binary.
  - d. Enter the following FTP command to move the getting started exe file to the *dxxsamples* directory:  

```
get dxxsamples/getstart.exe path/dxxsamples/getstart.exe
```
  - e. Close the FTP session with the following command:  

```
exit
```
  - f. From the *path/dxxsamples* directory, enter:  

```
GetStart.exe
```
2. Start the iSeries Navigator.
3. Expand the tree for your iSeries system, and right click **Database**. A menu is displayed.
4. From the menu, click **Run SQL Scripts**.
5. Open the *path/dxxsamples/setup.sql* script file.
6. Change all occurrences of &SCHEMA to the schema name you created in "Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples" on page 40:
  - a. Click the **Edit -> Replace** from the menu. The Search and Replace window opens.
  - b. From the Search and Replace window, replace all occurrences of &SCHEMA with your schema name.
7. Change all occurrences of &DBNAME to the RDB database name for the system where you will run the sample programs. To determine this name, run the **WRKRDBDIRE** command from the OS command line. From the list of registered databases, select the name with the remote address of \*LOCAL.
  - a. Click the **Edit -> Replace** from the menu. The Search and Replace window opens.
  - b. From the Search and Replace window, replace all occurrences of &DBNAME with the local database name.

8. Save the setup.sql file
9. Repeat steps 5-8 for each SQL file.
10. Open the *path/dxxsamples/Setup.sql* script file and click **Run all**.

You are now ready to begin the Getting Started lessons, using the iSeries Navigator.

The sample programs you have just built can be used to enter administration commands and DB2 database commands.

### **Preparing the sample programs for the iSeries command line**

You can use the OS command line to run administration commands and to complete the Getting Started lessons.

To run administration commands, there is no set up.

If you plan to use the OS command line for the samples and getting started lessons, run SETUP to build all sample programs. From the OS command line, enter:

```
CALL DXXSAMPLES/SETUP
```

## **Setting up the tutorial environment for iSeries**

The following sections describe the required steps to set up the environment to perform the Getting Started lessons, which will help you use the provided samples for developing your own applications.

You can use the following environments to complete the Getting Started lessons:

- iSeries Navigator
- OS command line

To use these environments, you must:

1. Restore the sample source code to the samples library. Use the steps in “Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files” on page 39.
2. Restore the XML sample files and the Getting Started executable to an IFS directory. Use the steps in “Unpack and restore sample files and getting started files” on page 39.
3. Create an SQL Schema (collection). Use the steps in “Creating an SQL collection (schema) for the samples” on page 40.
4. Set up the environment from which you will complete the administration tasks.
  - When using the iSeries Navigator - “Setting up the iSeries Navigator interface” on page 41
  - When using the OS command line - “Preparing the sample programs for the iSeries command line”

## **XML Extender administration overview**

### **Access and storage methods**

The XML Extender provides two access and storage methods to use DB2<sup>®</sup> as an XML repository: XML column and XML collection. You need to decide which of these methods best matches your application’s needs for accessing and manipulating XML data.



### XML column

Stores and retrieves entire XML documents as DB2 column data. The XML data is represented by an XML column.

### XML collection

Decomposes XML documents into a collection of relational tables or composes XML documents from a collection of relational tables.

The nature of your application determines which access and storage method is most suitable, and how to structure your XML data.

You use the DAD file to associate XML data with DB2 tables through these two access and storage methods. Figure 3 shows how the DAD specifies the access and storage methods.

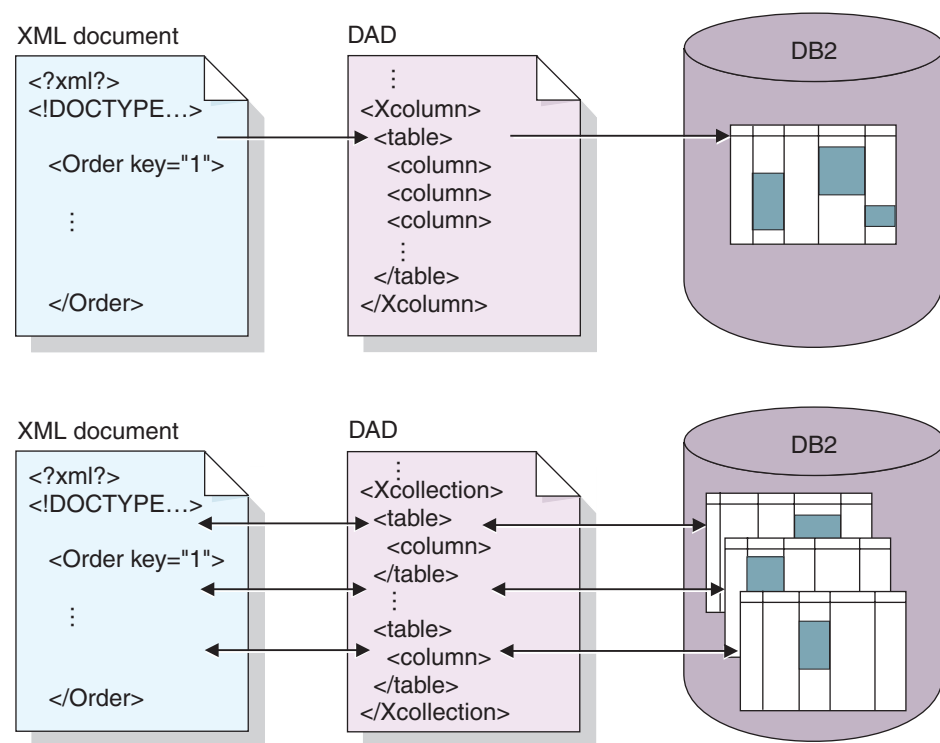


Figure 3. The DAD file maps the XML document structure to a DB2 relational data structure and specifies the access and storage method.

The DAD file defines the location of key files like the DTD, and specifies how the XML document structure relates to your DB2 data. Most important, it defines the access and storage method that you use in your application.

### Related concepts:

- “When to use the XML collection method” on page 44
- “When to use the XML column method” on page 44

### Related reference:

- “Storage functions in XML Extender overview” on page 140

## When to use the XML column method

Use XML columns in any of the following situations:

- The XML documents already exist or come from an external source and you prefer to store the documents in the native XML format. You want to store them in DB2® for integrity, archival, and auditing purposes.
- The XML documents are read frequently, but not updated.
- You want to use file name data types to store the XML documents (external to DB2 database) in the local or remote file system and use DB2 database for management and search operations.
- You need to perform range searches based on the values of XML elements or attributes, and you know what elements or attributes will frequently be used in the search arguments.
- The documents have elements with large text blocks and you want to use the DB2 Text Extender for structural text search while keeping the entire documents intact.

## When to use the XML collection method

Use XML collections in any of the following situations:

- You have data in your existing relational tables and you want to compose XML documents based on a certain DTD.
- You have XML documents that need to be stored with collections of data that map well to relational tables.
- You want to create different views of your relational data using different mapping schemes.
- You have XML documents that come from other data sources. You care about the data but not the tags, and want to store pure data in your database and you want the flexibility to decide whether to store the data in existing tables or in new tables.

## Planning for XML columns

Before you begin working with the XML Extender to store your documents, you need to understand the structure of the XML document so that you can determine how to index elements and attributes in the document. When planning how to index the document, you need to determine:

- The XML user-defined type in which you will store the XML document
- The XML elements and attributes that your application will frequently search, so that their content can be stored in side tables and indexed to improve performance
- Whether or not to validate XML documents in the column with a DTD
- The structure of the side tables and how they will be indexed

### Determining the XML data type for the XML column

The XML Extender provides XML user defined types that you use to define a column to hold XML documents. These data types are described in Table 8 on page 45.

Table 8. The XML Extender UDTs

User-defined type column	Source data type	Usage description
XMLVARCHAR	VARCHAR( <i>varchar_len</i> )	Stores an entire XML document as VARCHAR data type within DB2. Used for documents that are smaller than 3K stored in DB2. (The maximum size can be redefined up to 32672 K)
XMLCLOB	CLOB( <i>clob_len</i> )	Stores an entire XML document as a CLOB data type within DB2. Used for documents larger than 3K stored in DB2. The maximum document size is 2 gigabytes.
XMLFILE	VARCHAR(512)	Stores the file name of an XML document in DB2, and stores the XML document in a file local to the DB2 database server. Used for documents stored outside DB2.

### Determining elements and attributes to be indexed

When you understand the XML document structure and the needs of your application, you can determine which elements and attributes to be searched. These are usually the elements and attributes that will be searched or extracted most frequently, or those that will be the most expensive to query. The location paths of each element and attribute can be mapped to relational tables (side tables) that contain these objects in the DAD file for XML columns. The side tables are then indexed.

For example, Table 9 shows an example of types of data and location paths of element and attribute from the Getting Started scenario for XML columns. The data was specified as information to be frequently searched and the location paths point to elements and attributes that contain the data. These location paths can then be mapped to side tables in the DAD file.

Table 9. Elements and attributes to be searched

Data	Location path
order key	/Order/@key
customer	/Order/Customer/Name
price	/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice
shipping date	/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate

### The DAD file

For XML columns, the DAD file primarily specifies how documents that are stored in an XML column are to be indexed, and is an XML-formatted document, residing at the client. The DAD file specifies a DTD to use for validating documents inserted into the XML column. The DAD file has a data type of CLOB. This file can be up to 100 KB.

The DAD file for XML columns provides a map of any XML data that is to be stored in side tables for indexing.

To specify the XML column access and storage method, you use the following tag in the DAD file.

**<Xcolumn>**

Specifies that the XML data is to be stored and retrieved as entire XML documents in DB2 database columns that are enabled for XML data.

An XML-enabled column is of the XML Extender's UDT. Applications can include the column in any *user table*. You access the XML column data mainly through SQL statements and the XML Extender's UDFs.

## Planning for XML collections

When planning for XML collections, you have different considerations for composing documents from DB2 data, decomposing XML document into DB2 data, or both. The following sections address planning issues for XML collections, and address composition and decomposition considerations.

### Validation

After you choose an access and storage method, you can determine whether to validate your data. You validate XML data using a DTD or a schema. Using a DTD or schema ensures that the XML document is valid and lets you perform structured searches on your XML data.

To validate using a DTD, you might need to have a DTD in the XML Extender repository. See "Storing a DTD in the repository table" on page 57 to learn how to insert a DTD into the repository.

**Important:** Make the decision whether to validate XML data before inserting XML data into DB2. The XML Extender does not support the validation of data that has already been inserted into DB2.

### Considerations:

- You can use only one DTD for composition.
- You can use multiple schemas for composition.
- If you do not choose to validate a document, the DTD specified by the XML document is not processed. It is important that DTDs be processed to resolve entities and attribute defaults even when processing document fragments that cannot be validated.

### The DAD file

For XML collections, the DAD file maps the structure of the XML document to the DB2 database tables from which you either compose the document, or to where you decompose the document.

For example, if you have an element called <Tax> in your XML document, you might need to map <Tax> to a column called TAX. You define the relationship between the XML data and the relational data in the DAD.

The DAD file is specified either while enabling a collection, or when you use the DAD file in XML collection *stored procedures*. The DAD is an XML-formatted document, residing at the client. If you choose to validate XML documents with a

DTD, the DAD file can be associated with that DTD. When used as the input parameter of the XML Extender stored procedures, the DAD file has a data type of CLOB. This file can be up to 100 KB.

To specify the XML collection access and storage method, you use the following tag in the DAD file:

**<Xcollection>**

Specifies that the XML data is either to be decomposed from XML documents into a collection of relational tables, or to be composed into XML documents from a collection of relational tables.

An XML collection is a virtual name for a set of relational tables that contains XML data. Applications can enable an XML collection of any user tables. These user tables can be existing tables of legacy business data or tables that the XML Extender recently created. You access XML collection data mainly through the stored procedures that the XML Extender provides.

The DAD specifies mappings between elements or attributes of the XML document and columns of tables. It uses the following kinds of nodes to specify these mappings:

**root\_node**

Specifies the root element of the document.

**element\_node**

Identifies an element, which can be the root element or a child element.

**text\_node**

Represents the CDATA text of an element.

**attribute\_node**

Represents an attribute of an element.

Figure 4 on page 48 shows a fragment of the mapping that is used in a DAD file. The nodes map the XML document content to table columns in a relational table.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxx_install/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 ...
 <Xcollection>
 <SQL_stmt>
 ...
 </SQL_stmt>
 <prolog?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
 <doctype!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxx_install/sample/dtd/getstart.dtd
 "</doctype> <root_node>
 <element_node name="Order"> --> Identifies the element <Order>
 <attribute_node name="key"> --> Identifies the attribute "key"
 <column name="order_key"/> --> Defines the name of the column,
 "order_key", to which the element
 and attribute are mapped
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer"> --> Identifies a child element of
 <text_node> --> Specifies the CDATA text for the
 <column name="customer"> --> Defines the name
 to which the child
 element is mapped
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
 </root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>

```

Figure 4. Node definitions

In this example, the first two columns in the SQL statement have elements and attributes mapped to them.

## Mapping schemes for XML collections

If you are using an XML collection, you must select a *mapping scheme* that defines how XML data is represented in a relational database. Because XML collections must match a hierarchical structure that is used in XML documents with a relational structure, you should understand how the two structures compare. Figure 5 on page 49 shows how the hierarchical structure can be mapped to relational table columns.

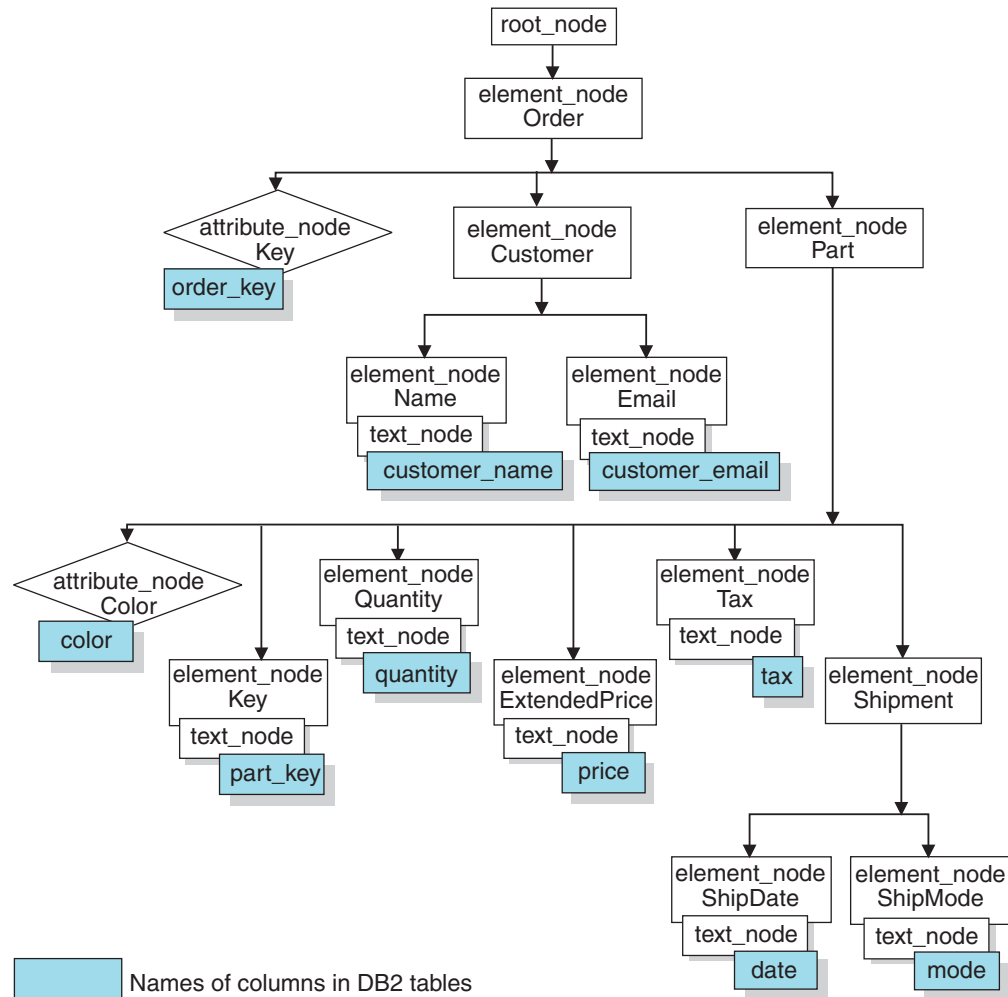


Figure 5. XML document structure mapped to relational table columns

The XML Extender uses the mapping scheme when composing or decomposing XML documents that are located in multiple relational tables. Before you create the DAD file, you must think about how your XML data is mapped to the XML collection.

**Types of mapping schemes:** The mapping scheme is specified in the <Xcollection> element in the DAD file. The XML Extender provides two types of mapping schemes: *SQL mapping* and *Relational Database (RDB\_node) mapping*.

**SQL mapping**

Allows direct mapping from relational data to XML documents through a single SQL statement. SQL mapping is used for composition; it is not used for decomposition. SQL mapping is defined with the SQL\_stmt element in the DAD file. The content of the SQL\_stmt is a valid SQL statement. The SQL\_stmt maps the columns in the SELECT clause to XML elements or attributes that are used in the XML document. When defined for composing XML documents, the column names in the SQL statement's SELECT clause are used to define the value of an *attribute\_node* or a content of *text\_node*. The FROM clause defines the tables containing the data; the WHERE clause specifies the *join* and search *condition*.

The SQL mapping gives DB2 database users the power to map the data using SQL. When using SQL mapping, you must be able to join all tables

in one SELECT statement to form a query. If one SQL statement is not sufficient, consider using RDB\_node mapping. To tie all tables together, the *primary key* and *foreign key* relationship is recommended among these tables.

### RDB\_node mapping

Defines the location of the content of an XML element or the value of an XML attribute so that the XML Extender can determine where to store or retrieve the XML data.

This method uses the XML Extender-provided *RDB\_node*, which contains one or more node definitions for tables, optional columns, and optional conditions. The tables and columns are used to define how the XML data is to be stored in the database. The condition specifies the criteria for selecting XML data or the way to join the XML collection tables.

To define a mapping scheme, you create a DAD with an <Xcollection> element. Figure 6 shows a fragment of a sample DAD file with an XML collection SQL mapping that composes a set of XML documents from data in three relational tables.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxx_install/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 <dtdid>dxx_install/dad/getstart.dtd</dtdid>
 <validation>YES</validation>
 <Xcollection>
 <SQL_stmt>
 SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key, quantity, price, tax, date,
 ship_id, mode, comment
 FROM order_tab o, part_tab p,
 (select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode, from ship_tab) as
 S
 WHERE p.price > 2500.00 and s.date > '1996-06-01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key and s.part_key = p.part_key
 </SQL_stmt>
 <prolog>?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
 <doctype>!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxx_install/dtd/
 getstart.dtd"</doctype>
 <root_node>
 <element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="key">
 <column_name="order_key"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <text_node>
 <column name="customer"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 ...
 </element_node><!--end Part-->
 </element_node><!--end Order-->
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>
```

Figure 6. SQL mapping scheme



The XML Extender provides several stored procedures that manage data in an XML collection. These stored procedures support both types of mapping, but require that the DAD file follow the rules that are described in “Mapping scheme requirements.”

**Mapping scheme requirements:** The following sections describe requirements for each type of the XML collection mapping schemes.

### Requirements for SQL mapping

In this mapping scheme, you must specify the SQL\_stmt element in the DAD <Xcollection> element. The SQL\_stmt should contain a single SQL statement that can join multiple relational tables with the query *predicate*. In addition, the following clauses are required:

- **SELECT clause**

- Ensure that the name of the column is unique. If two tables have the same column name, use the AS keyword to create an alias name for one of them.
- Group the columns of the same table together, and use the logical hierarchical level of the relational tables. This means group the tables according to the level of importance as they map to the hierarchical structure of your XML document. In the SELECT clause, the columns of the higher-level tables should proceed the columns of lower-level tables. The following example demonstrates the hierarchical relationship among tables:

```
SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key, quantity, price, tax,
 ship_id, date, mode
```

In this example, order\_key and customer from table ORDER\_TAB have the highest relational level because they are higher on the hierarchical tree of the XML document. The ship\_id, date, and mode from table SHIP\_TAB are at the lowest relational level.

- Use a single-column candidate key to begin each level. If such a key is not available in a table, the query should generate one for that table using a table expression and the user-defined function, generate\_unique(). In the above example, the o.order\_key is the primary key for ORDER\_TAB, and the part\_key is the primary key of PART\_TAB. They appear at the beginning of their own group of columns that are to be selected. Because the SHIP\_TAB table does not have a primary key, one needs to be generated, in this case, ship\_id. It is listed as the first column for the SHIP\_TAB table group. Use the FROM clause to generate the primary key column, as shown in the following example.

- **FROM clause**

- Use a table expression and the user-defined function, generate\_unique(), to generate a single key for tables that do not have a primary single key. For example:

```
FROM order_tab as o, part_tab as p,
 (select db2xml.generate_unique() as
 ship_id, date, mode from ship_tab) as s
```

In this example, a single column candidate key is generated with the function, generate\_unique() and given an alias named ship\_id.

- Use an alias name when needed to make a column distinct. For example, you could use o for ORDER\_TAB, p for PART\_TAB, and s for SHIP\_TAB.
- **WHERE clause**
  - Specify a primary and foreign key relationship as the join condition that ties tables in the collection together. For example:

```
WHERE p.price > 2500.00 AND s.date > '1996-06-01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key AND s.part_key = p.part_key
```
  - Specify any other search condition in the predicate. Any valid predicate can be used.
- **ORDER BY clause**
  - Define the ORDER BY clause at the end of the SQL\_stmt.
  - Ensure that the column names match the column names in the SELECT clause.
  - Specify the column names or identifiers that uniquely identify entities in the entity-relationship design of the database. An identifier can be generated using a table expression and the function generate\_unique, or a user-defined function (UDF).
  - Maintain the top-down order of the hierarchy of the entities. The column specified in the ORDER BY clause must be the first column listed for each entity. Keeping the order ensures that the XML documents to be generated do not contain incorrect duplicates.
  - Do not qualify the columns in ORDER BY by any schema or table name.

Although the SQL\_stmt has the preceding requirements, it is powerful because you can specify any predicate in your WHERE clause, as long as the expression in the predicate uses the columns in the tables.

### Requirements when using RDB\_node mapping

When using this mapping method, do not use the element SQL\_stmt in the <Xcollection> element of the DAD file. Instead, use the RDB\_node element as a child of the top element\_node and of each attribute\_node and text\_node.

There are no ordering restrictions on predicates of the root node condition.

- **RDB\_node for the top element\_node**

The *top element\_node* in the DAD file represents the root element of the XML document. Specify an RDB\_node for the top element\_node as follows:

- Line ending characters are allowed in condition statements.
- Condition elements can reference a column name an unlimited number of times.
- Specify all tables that are associated with the XML documents. For example, the following mapping specifies three tables in the RDB\_node of the element\_node <Order>, which is the top element\_node:

```
<element_node name="Order">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <table name="ship_tab"/>
 <condition>
```

```

 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
 </condition>
</RDB_node>

```

The condition element can be empty or missing if there is only one table in the collection.

- If you are decomposing, or are enabling the XML collection specified by the DAD file, you must specify a primary key for each table. The primary key can consist of a single column or multiple columns, called a composite key. The primary key is specified by adding an attribute key to the table element of the RDB\_node. When a composite key is supplied, the key attribute is specified by the names of key columns separated by a space. For example:

```
<table name="part_tab" key="part_key price"/>
```

The information specified for decomposition is ignored when composing a document.

- Use the orderBy attribute to recompose XML documents containing elements or attributes with multiple occurrence back to their original structure. This attribute allows you to specify the name of a column that will be the key used to preserve the order of the document. The orderBy attribute is part of the table element in the DAD file, and it is an optional attribute.

- **RDB\_node for each attribute\_node and text\_node**

You need to specify an RDB\_node for each attribute\_node and text\_node, telling the stored procedure from which table, which column, and under which query condition to get the data. You must specify the table and column values; the condition value is optional.

- Specify the name of the table containing the column data. The table name must be included in the RDB\_node of the top element\_node. In this example, for text\_node of element <Price>, the table is specified as PART\_TAB.

```

<element_node name="Price">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="price"/>
 <condition>
 price > 2500.00
 </condition>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>

```

- Specify the name of the column that contains the data for the element text. In the previous example, the column is specified as PRICE.
- Specify a condition if you want XML documents to be generated using the query condition. Allowable syntax for <condition> is as follows:

- columnname
- operator
- literal

In the example above, the condition is specified as price > 2500.00. Only the data meeting the condition is in the generated XML documents. The condition must be a valid WHERE clause.

- If you are decomposing a document, or are enabling the XML collection specified by the DAD file, you must specify the column type for each attribute\_node and text\_node. This ensures the correct data type for each column when new tables are created during the enabling of an XML collection. Column types are specified by adding the attribute type to the column element. For example,
 

```
<column name="order_key" type="integer"/>
```

The information specified for decomposition is ignored when composing a document.

- Maintain the top-down order of the hierarchy of the entities. This means ensure the element nodes are nested properly so that the XML Extender understands the relationship between the elements when composing or decomposing. For example, using the following DAD file, that does not nest Shipment inside of Part:

```
<element_node name="Part">
 ...
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
</element_node> <!-- end of element Part -->

<element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 ...
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 ...
 </element_node>
</element_node> <!-- end of element Shipment-->
```

Which might produce an XML file in which the Part and Shipment are sibling elements.

```
<Part color="black ">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-2</Tax>
</Part>

<Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
</Shipment>
```

When you would rather have a DAD that nests Shipment inside of Part:

```
<element_node name="Part">
 ...
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
 <element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 ...
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 ...
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
```

```

 </element_node> <!-- end of element Shipment-->
 </element_node> <!-- end of element Part -->

```

Which produces an XML file with Shipment as a child element of Part:

```

<Part color="black ">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-2</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
</Part>

```

With the RDB\_node mapping approach, you don't need to supply SQL statements. However, putting complex query conditions in the RDB\_node element can be more difficult.

## Validating XML documents automatically

After you choose an access and storage method, either XML column or XML collection, you can determine whether to *validate* the XML documents. You can also validate XML documents that are composed from XML collections.

You can have your XML data validated automatically by specifying YES for validation in the DAD file. To have a document validated when it is stored into DB2®, you must specify a DTD within the <dttdid> element or in the <!DOCTYPE> specification in the original document. To have a document validated when it is composed from an XML collection in DB2, you must specify a DTD within the <dttdid> element or within the <doctype> element in the DAD file.

The following factors should be taken into consideration when you decide whether to validate your documents.

- The DTD ID or schema is useful only if you decide to validate the XML document.

To validate the DAD with a schema, insert the schema tags that associate the DAD file with the schema file. For example:

```

<schemabindings>
 <nonamespacelocation location="path/schema_name.xsd"/>
</schemabindings>

```

- You do not need a DTD to store or archive XML documents.
- It might be necessary to process the DTD to set entity values and attribute defaults regardless of whether you choose to validate.
- If you specify NO for validation in the DAD, then the DTD specified by the XML document is not processed.
- Validating your XML data has a performance impact.

## Enabling a database for XML

Before you can store or retrieve XML documents from DB2 database with XML Extender, you enable the database for XML. The XML Extender enables the database you are connected to.

When you enable a database for XML, the XML Extender does the following things:

- Creates all the user-defined types (UDTs), user-defined functions (UDFs), and stored procedures
  - Creates and populates control tables with the necessary metadata that the XML Extender requires
  - Creates the DB2XML schema and assigns the necessary privileges
- The fully qualified name of an XML function is `db2xml.function-name`, where `db2xml` is an identifier that provides a logical grouping for SQL objects. You can use the fully qualified name anywhere you refer to a UDF or a UDT. You can also omit the schema name when you refer to a UDF or a UDT; in this case, DB2 database uses the function path to determine the function or data type.

For i5/OS, you can enable a database for XML Extender using either your \*SYSBAS database or an independent auxiliary storage pool (IASP). You can enable more than one IASP database for XML Extender. Only one IASP database can be active at a time. You cannot enable an IASP database for XML Extender if the \*SYSBAS database is enabled.

**Procedure:**

You can enable a database with the Administration wizard or from a command line.

The following example enables an existing database called SALES\_DB.  
`CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(enable_db SALES_DB)`

To enable a database using the Administration wizard, you need to complete the following tasks:

1. Start the Administration wizard and click **Enable database** from the LaunchPad window.  
 If a database is already enabled, the button will read **Disable database**. If the database is disabled, the button will read **Enable database**  
 When the database is enabled, you are returned to the LaunchPad window.

After you have enabled a database, you will be able to store and retrieve XML documents from DB2 database using the XML extender.

**Related concepts:**

- “Migrating XML Extender from previous versions or releases” on page 37

## Creating an XML table

This task is part of the larger task of defining and enabling an XML column.

An XML table is used to store intact XML documents. To store whole documents in your database with DB2 XML Extender, you must create a table so that it contains a column with an XML user-defined type (UDT). DB2 XML Extender provides you with three user-defined types to store your XML documents as column data. These UDTs are: XMLVARCHAR, XMLCLOB, and XMLFILE. When a table contains a column of XML type, you can then enable the table for XML.

You can create a new table to add a column of XML type using the administration wizard or the command line.

**Procedure:**

To create a table with a column of XML type using the command line:

Open the DB2 command prompt and type a Create Table statement.

For example, in a sales application, you might want to store an XML-formatted line-item order in a column called ORDER of a table called SALES\_TAB. This table also has the columns INVOICE\_NUM and SALES\_PERSON. Because it is a small order, you store the sales order using the XMLVARCHAR type. The primary key is INVOICE\_NUM. The following CREATE TABLE statement creates a table with a column of XML type:

```
CREATE TABLE sales_tab(
 invoice_num char(6) NOT NULL PRIMARY KEY,
 sales_person varchar(20),
 order db2xml.XMLVarchar);
```

After you have created a table, the next step is to enable the column for XML data.

**Related concepts:**

- “Planning side tables” on page 61

## Storing a DTD in the repository table

You can use a DTD to validate XML data in an XML column or in an XML collection. DTDs can be stored in the DTD repository table, a DB2 database table called DTD\_REF. The DTD\_REF table has a schema name of DB2XML. Each DTD in the DTD\_REF table has a unique ID. The XML Extender creates the DTD\_REF table when you enable a database for XML. You can insert the DTD from the command line or by using the administration wizard.

**Procedure:**

To insert the DTD using the administration wizard:

1. Start the administration wizard and click **Import a DTD** from the Launchpad window to import an existing DTD file into the DTD repository for the current database. The Import a DTD window opens.
2. Specify the DTD file name in the **DTD file name** field.
3. Type the DTD ID in the **DTD ID** field.  
The DTD ID is an identifier for the DTD. It can also be the path that specifies the location of the DTD on the local system. The DTD ID must match the value that is specified in the DAD file for the <DTDID> element.
4. Optional: Type the name of the author of the DTD in the **Author** field.
5. Click **Finish** to insert the DTD into the DTD repository table, DB2XML.DTD\_REF, and return to the Launchpad window.

To insert a DTD from the command line, issue a SQL INSERT statement from Table 10 on page 58. For example:

```
INSERT into DB2XML.DTD_REF
(DTDID, CONTENT, USAGE_COUNT, AUTHOR, CREATOR, UPDATOR)
VALUES('dxx_install
/samples/extenders/db2xml/dtd/getstart.dtd',
db2xml.XMLClobFromFile('/dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd'),
0, 'user1', 'user1', 'user1');
```

Table 10. The column definitions for the DTD repository table

Column name	Data type	Description
DTDID	VARCHAR(128)	ID of the DTD.
CONTENT	XMLCLOB	Content of the DTD.
USAGE_COUNT	INTEGER	Number of XML columns and XML collections in the database that use this DTD.
AUTHOR	VARCHAR(128)	Author of the DTD, optional information for the user to input.
CREATOR	VARCHAR(128)	User ID that does the first insertion.
UPDATOR	VARCHAR(128)	User ID that does the last update.

## Enabling XML columns

To store an XML document in a DB2 database, you must enable for XML the column that will contain the document. Enabling a column prepares it for indexing so that it can be searched quickly. You can enable a column by using the XML Extender Administration wizard or the command line. The column must be of XML type.

When XML Extender enables an XML column, it performs the following operations:

- Reads the DAD file to:
  - Check for the existence of the DTD in the DTD\_REF table, if the DTDID was specified.
  - Create side tables on the XML column for indexing purpose.
  - Prepare the column to contain XML data.
- Optionally creates a *default view* of the XML table and side tables. The default view displays the application table and the side tables.
 

**Column name limit:** For i5/OS, the column size limit in a view is 10 characters.
- Specifies a ROOT ID column, if one has not been specified.

After you enable the XML column, you can:

- Create indexes on the side tables
- Insert XML documents in the XML column
- Query, update, or search the XML documents in the XML column.

You can enable XML columns using the Administration wizard or from a DB2 command line.

### Procedure (using the Administration Wizard):

To enable XML columns using the Administration wizard:

1. Set up and start the Administration wizard.
2. Click **Work with XML Columns** from the LaunchPad window to view the tasks related to the XML Extender columns. The Select a Task window opens.
3. Click **Enable a Column** and then **Next** to enable an existing column.
4. Select the table that contains the XML column from the **Table name** field.
5. Select the column being enabled from the **Column name** field. The column must exist and be of XML type.





value of ROOT\_ID as a unique identifier to associate all side tables with the application table. If the ROOT ID is not specified, the XML Extender adds the DXXROOT\_ID column to the application table and generates an identifier.

**Restriction:** If the application table has a column name of DXXROOT\_ID, you must specify the *root\_id* parameter; otherwise, an error occurs.

**Example:**

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm enable_column SALES_DB myschema.sales_tab order getstart.dad
-v sales_order_view -r INVOICE_NUMBER
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(enable_column SALES_DB 'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB'
ORDER 'getstart.dad' '-v' sales_order_view '-r' INVOICE_NUMBER)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXMADM('enable_column', 'SALES_DB', 'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB',
'ORDER', 'getstart.dad', '-v sales_order_view', '-r INVOICE_NUMBER');
```

In this example, the ORDER column is enabled in the SALES\_TAB table . The DAD file is getstart.dad, the default view is sales\_order\_view, and the ROOT ID is INVOICE\_NUMBER.

Using this example, the SALES\_TAB table has the following columns:

Column Name	Data type
INVOICE_NUM	CHAR(6)
SALES_PERSON	VARCHAR(20)
ORDER	XMLVARCHAR

The following side tables are created based on the DAD specification:

**ORDER\_SIDE\_TAB:**

Column name	Data type	Path expression
ORDER_KEY	INTEGER	/Order/@key
CUSTOMER	VARCHAR(50)	/Order /Customer/Name
INVOICE_NUM	CHAR(6)	N/A

**PART\_SIDE\_TAB:**

Column name	Data type	Path expression
PART_KEY	INTEGER	/Order/Part/@key
PRICE	DOUBLE	/Order/Part /ExtendedPrice
INVOICE_NUM	CHAR(6)	N/A

## SHIP\_SIDE\_TAB:

Column name	Data type	Path expression
DATE	DATE	/Order/Part /Shipment/ShipDate
INVOICE_NUM	CHAR(6)	N/A

All the side tables have the column INVOICE\_NUM of the same type, because the ROOT ID is specified by the primary key INVOICE\_NUM in the application table. After the column is enabled, the value of the INVOICE\_NUM is inserted in side tables when a row is inserted in the main table. Specifying the *default\_view* parameter when enabling the XML column, ORDER, creates a default view, sales\_order\_view. The view joins the above tables using the following statement:

```
CREATE VIEW sales_order_view(invoice_num, sales_person, order,
 order_key, customer, part_key, price, date)
AS
SELECT sales_tab.invoice_num, sales_tab.sales_person, sales_tab.order,
 order_tab.order_key, order_tab.customer,
 part_tab.part_key, part_tab.price,
 ship_tab.date
FROM sales_tab, order_tab, part_tab, ship_tab
WHERE sales_tab.invoice_num = order_tab.invoice_num
 AND sales_tab.invoice_num = part_tab.invoice_num
 AND sales_tab.invoice_num = ship_tab.invoice_num
```

## Planning side tables

Side tables are DB2<sup>®</sup> tables used to extract the content of an XML document that will be searched frequently. The XML column is associated with side tables that hold the contents of the XML document. When the XML document is updated in the application table, the values in the side tables are automatically updated.

Figure 7 shows an XML column with side tables.

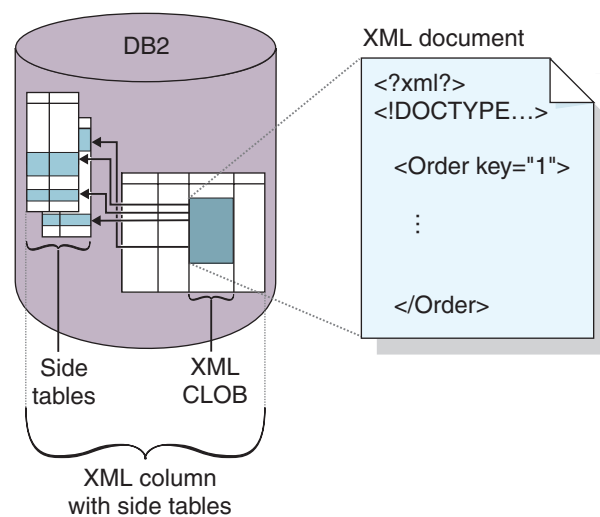


Figure 7. An XML column whose content is mapped in side tables. There is an XML file in the column that is associated with side tables that hold the contents of the XML document.

When planning for side tables, you must consider how to organize the tables, how many tables to create, and whether to create a default view for the side tables. Base these decisions on whether elements and attributes can occur multiple times and your requirements for query performance. Do not plan to update the side tables in any way; they will be automatically updated when the document is updated in the XML column.

### **Multiple occurrence:**

When elements and attributes occur multiple times in side tables, consider the following issues in your planning:

- For elements or attributes in an XML document that have multiple occurrences, you must create a separate side table for each XML element or attribute with multiple occurrences, due to the complex structure of XML documents. This means that elements or attributes have location paths that occur multiple times and must be mapped to a table with only one column. You cannot have any other columns in the table.
- When a document has multiple occurring location paths, XML Extender adds a column named `DXX_SEQNO` with a type of `INTEGER` in each side table to track the order of elements that occur more than once. With `DXX_SEQNO`, you can retrieve a list of the elements in the same order as the original XML document by specifying `ORDER BY DXX_SEQNO` in an SQL query.

### **Default views and query performance:**

When you enable an XML column, you can specify a default, read-only view that joins the application table with the side tables using a unique ID, called the `ROOT ID`. With the default view, you can search XML documents by querying the side tables. For example, if you have the application table `SALES_TAB`, and the side tables `ORDER_TAB`, `PART_TAB` and `SHIP_TAB`, your query might look as follows:

```
SELECT sales_person FROM sales_order_view
 WHERE price > 2500.00
```

The SQL statement returns the names of salespeople in the `SALES_TAB` who have orders stored in the column `ORDER`, and where the `PRICE` column is greater than 2500.00.

The advantage of querying the default view is that it provides a virtual single view of the application table and side tables. However, the more side tables that are created, the more expensive the query. Therefore, creating the default view is recommended only when the total number of side-table columns is small. Applications can create their own views that join the important side table columns.

**Column name limit:** For `i5/OS™`, the column size limit in a view is 10 characters. To use a longer name, you must generate the view manually or use alias names

## **Indexing side tables**

This task is part of the larger task of defining and enabling an XML column.

Side tables contain the XML data in the columns that you specified when you created the DAD file. After you enable an XML column and create side tables, you can index the side tables. Indexing these tables helps you improve the performance of the queries against the XML documents.

### Procedure:

To create an index for your side tables from a DB2 database command line, use the DB2 CREATE INDEX SQL statement.

The following example creates indexes on four side tables using the DB2 command prompt.

```
CREATE INDEX KEY_IDX
 ON ORDER_SIDE_TAB(ORDER_KEY)

CREATE INDEX CUSTOMER_IDX
 ON ORDER_SIDE_TAB(CUSTOMER)

CREATE INDEX PRICE_IDX
 ON PART_SIDE_TAB(PRICE)

CREATE INDEX DATE_IDX
 ON SHIP_SIDE_TAB(DATE)
```

## Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping

You should use SQL mapping to compose XML documents if you want to use an SQL statement to define the table and columns that you will derive the data in the XML document. You can use SQL mapping only for composing XML documents. You create a DAD file to compose the XML document with SQL mapping.

### Prerequisites:

Before you compose your documents, you must first map the relationship between your DB2 database tables and the XML document. This step includes mapping the hierarchy of the XML document and specifying how the data in the document maps to a DB2 database table.

### Procedure:

To compose XML documents from the command line, complete the following steps:

1. Create a new document in a text editor and type the following syntax:

```
<?XML version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "path/dad.dtd">
```

2. Insert the <DAD> </DAD> tags.

The DAD element will contain all the other elements.

3. Insert the tags used for validating the DAD with a DTD or schema.

- To validate the composed XML document with a DTD, insert the DTDID tags that associate the DAD file with the XML document DTD. For example:  
<dtid>dtid\_name</dtid>
- To validate the composed XML document with a schema, insert the schema tags that associate the DAD file with the schema file. For example:  
<schemabindings>  
<nonamespacelocation location="path/schema\_name.xsd"/>  
</schemabindings>

The dtd or schema is useful only if you decide to validate the XML document. Use the validation tag to indicate whether DB2 XML Extender validates the XML document:

- If you want to validate the XML document, then type:  
<validation>YES</validation>

- If you do not want to validate the XML document type:  
`<validation>NO</validation>`
4. Type `<XCollection>` `</XCollection>` tags to specify that you are using XML collections as the access and storage method for your XML data.
  5. Inside the `<Xcollection>` `</Xcollection>` tags, insert the `<SQL_stmt>` `</SQL_stmt>` tags to specify the SQL statement that will map the relational data to the XML documents. This statement is used to query data from DB2 database tables. The following example shows a sample SQL query:

```

<SQL_stmt>
 SELECT o.order_key, customer_name, customer_email, p.part_key, color,
 quantity, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode from order_tab o, part_tab p,
 (select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode, part_key from ship_tab) as s
 WHERE o.order_key = 1 and
 p.price > 20000 and
 p.order_key = o.order_key and
 s.part_key = p.part_key
 ORDER BY order_key, part_key, ship_id
</SQL_stmt>

```

The example SQL statement for mapping the relational data to the XML document meets the following requirements:

- Columns are specified in top-down order by the hierarchy of the XML document structure.
  - The columns for an entity are grouped together.
  - The object ID column is the first column in each group.
  - The Order\_tab table does not have a single key column, and therefore, the generate\_unique UDF is used to generate the ship\_id column.
  - In the ORDER BY clause, the object ID columns are listed in order corresponding to the top-down hierarchy of tables to which they belong. The columns in ORDER BY should not be qualified by any schema and the column names must match the column names in the SELECT clause.
6. Add the following prolog information to be used in the composed XML document. If you need to specify an encoding value for internationalization, add the ENCODING attribute and value.  
`<prolog?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>`
  7. Type the `<doctype>` `</doctype>` tag. This tag contains the DOCTYPE declaration to be inserted in each composed document. For example:  
`<doctype>! DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>`
  8. Specify the root element and the elements and attributes that make up the XML document:
    - a. Add the `<root>``</root_node>` tag to define the root element. All the elements and attributes that make up the XML document are specified within the root\_node.
    - b. Use the `<element_node>`, `<attribute_node>`, `<text_node>`, and `<column>` tags to specify the names of elements and attributes in the composed document and to map them to the columns specified in the SQL statement.

**<element\_node> tag**

Specifies the elements in the XML document. Set the name attribute of the element\_node tag to the name of the element. Each element\_node can have child element\_nodes.

**<attribute\_node> tag**

Specifies the attributes of an element in the XML document. An

<attribute\_node> tag is a child element of <element\_node>. Set the name attribute of the attribute\_node tag to the name of the attribute.

#### <text\_node> tag

Specifies the text content of the element and the column data in a relational table for bottom-level element\_nodes. For each bottom-level element, specify <text\_node> tags that indicate that the element contains character data to be extracted from DB2 when the document is composed. For each bottom-level element\_node, use a <column> tag to specify from which column to extract data when the XML document is composed. Column tags are typically inside the <attribute\_node> or the <text\_node> tags. All column names defined must be in the <SQL\_stmt> SELECT clause at the beginning of the DAD file.

#### <column> tag

Specifies the column from which the data is retrieved for the element or attribute value.

9. Ensure that the ending tags are in the appropriate places:
  - a. Ensure that an ending </root\_node> tag is after the last </element\_node> tag.
  - b. Ensure that an ending </Xcollection> tag is after the </root\_node> tag.
  - c. Ensure that an ending </DAD> tag is after the </Xcollection> tag.
10. Save the file as *file.dad*. Where *file* is the name of your file.

The following Windows example shows a complete DAD:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "C:\dxx_xml\test\dtd\dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<validation>NO</validation>
<Xcollection>
<SQL_stmt> select o.order_key, customer_name, customer_email,
p.part_key, color, qty, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode from order_tab o,
part_tab p, (select timestamp(generate_unique()) as
ship_id, date, mode, part_key from ship_tab) s where
o.order_key = 1 and p.price . 20000 and p.order_key
= o.order_key and s.part_key =p.part_key ORDER BY order_key,
part_key, ship_id</SQL_stmt>
<prolog>?XML version="1.0"?</prolog>
<doctype>!DOCTYPE ORDER SYSTEM "dxxsamples\dtd\Order.dtd"

</doctype>
<root_node>
<element_node name="Order">
<attribute_node name="key">
<column name="order_key"/>
</attribute_node>
<element_node name="Customer">
<element_node name="NAME">
<text_node><column name="customer_name"/></text_node>
</element_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Part">
<attribute_node name="color">
<column name="color"/>
</attribute_node>
<element_node name="key">
<text_node><column name="part_key"/></text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name ="Quantity">
```

```

<text_node><column name="qty"/></text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
<text_node><column name="price"/></text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Tax">
<text_node><column name="tax"/></text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
<element_node name="shipDate">
<text_node><column name="date"/></text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="ShipMode">
<text_node><column name="mode"/></text_node>
</element_node>
</element_node>
</element_node>
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>

```

Call the `dxxGenXML` stored procedure to compose using the DAD. For more information on `tests2x`, see “Dynamically overriding values in the DAD file” on page 179.

## Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping

You must first create a DAD file, and then compose the XML collection using the DAD file that you created. Use `<RDB_node>` to specify DB2 database tables, columns, and conditions for an element or attribute node. The `<RDB_node>` uses the following elements:

- table** Defines the table that corresponds to the element.
- column** Defines the column that contains the corresponding element.
- condition** Optionally specifies a condition on which insertion into the column occurs.

The child elements that are used in the `RDB_node` element depend on the context of the node and use the following rules:

If the node type is:	The following RDB child elements are used:		
	Table	Column	Condition
Root element	Yes	No	Yes <sup>1</sup>
Attribute	Yes	Yes	Optional
Text	Yes	Yes	Optional

<sup>1</sup> Required to show relationships between multiple tables.

**Restriction:** If you compose your XML collections using `RDB_node` mapping, all statements of a given element must map to columns in the same table.

### Procedure:

To prepare a DAD file to use for decomposing an XML document using the `RDB_node` mapping:

1. Start with a XML file that includes the following items:



- The following header, where *path/dad.dtd* is the path and file name of the DTD for the DAD:
 

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "path/dad.dtd">
```
  - The `<DAD></DAD>` tags. This element contains all other elements.
2. Insert the tags used for validating the DAD with a DTD or schema:
    - To validate the XML document with a DTD, insert the `dtdid` tag that associates the DAD file with the XML document DTD. For example:
 

```
<dtdid>dtd_name</dtdid>
```
    - To validate the XML document with a schema, insert the `schemabinings` tag that associates the DAD file with the schema file. For example:
 

```
<schemabinings>
<nonamespacelocation location="path/schema_name.xsd"/>
</schemabinings>
```

The `dtdid` or schema is useful only if you decide to validate the XML document. Use the validation tag to indicate whether DB2 XML Extender validates the XML document:

    - If you want to validate the XML document, then type:
 

```
<validation>YES</validation>
```
    - If you do not want to validate the XML document type:
 

```
<validation>NO</validation>
```
  3. Insert `<XCollection> </XCollection>` tags to specify that you are using XML collections as the access and storage method for your XML data.
  4. Add the following prolog information. If you need to specify an encoding value for internationalization, add the `ENCODING` attribute and value.
 

```
<prolog>?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
```
  5. Add the `<doctype></doctype>` tag. For example:
 

```
<doctype>! DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxxsample/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>
```
  6. Define the `root_node` using the `<root_node> </root_node>` tag.
  7. Inside the `root_node`, map the elements and attributes in the XML document to element nodes and attribute nodes that correspond to DB2 database data. These nodes provide a path from the XML data to the DB2 database data.
    - a. Define a top level, root `element_node`. This `element_node` contains:
      - Table elements with a join condition to specify the collection.
      - Child elements
      - Attributes

To specify the table and condition:

      - 1) Create an `RDB_node` element within an `element_node` element. For example:
 

```
<element_node name="name">
<RDB_node>
</RDB_node>
</element_node>
```
      - 2) Define a `<table>` element for each table that contains data to be included in the XML document. For example, if you have three tables, `ORDER_TAB`, `PART_TAB`, and `SHIP_TAB`, that have column data to be in the document, create a table node for each. For example:

```

<RDB_node>
<table name="ORDER_TAB">
<table name="PART_TAB">
<table name="SHIP_TAB">
</RDB_node>

```

- 3) Define a join condition for the tables in the collection. The syntax is:

```

table_name.table_column = table_name.table_column AND
table_name.table_column = table_name.table_column ...

```

For example:

```

<RDB_node>
<table name="ORDER_TAB">
<table name="PART_TAB">
<table name="SHIP_TAB">
<condition>
 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
</condition>
</RDB_node>

```

- 4) Optional: Specify a primary key for each table. The primary key consists of a single column or multiple columns, called a composite key. To specify the primary key, add an attribute key to the table element of the RDB\_node. The following example defines a primary key for each of the tables in the RDB\_node of the root element\_order:

```

<element_node name="Order">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab" key="order_key"/>
 <table name="part_tab" key="part_key price"/>
 <table name="ship_tab" key="date mode"/>
 <condition>
 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
 </condition>
 </RDB_node>

```

The key attribute is required for decomposition and enabling a collection.

- b. Define an <element\_node> tag for each element in your XML document that maps to a column in a DB2 database table. For example:

```

<element_node name="name">
</element_node>

```

An element node can have one of the following types of elements:

**text\_node** To specify that the element has content to a DB2 database table. It does not have child elements.

**attribute\_node** To specify an attribute.

**child elements** Children of the element\_node.

The text\_node contains an RDB\_node to map content to a DB2 database table and column name.

For example, to fetch the content of a column called TAX to create an XML element, <tax>.

**XML document:**

```

<Tax>0.02</Tax>

```

In this case, you want the value 0.02 to be fetched in the column TAX.

In the DAD file, you specify an <RDB\_node> tag to map the XML element to the DB2 database table and column.

**DAD file:**

```
<element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="tax"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
```

The <RDB\_node> tag specifies that the value of the Tax element is a text value, the data is stored in the PART\_TAB table in the TAX column.

- c. Define an <attribute\_node> tag for each attribute in your XML document that maps to a column in a DB2 database table. For example:

```
<attribute_node name="key">
</attribute_node>
```

The attribute\_node has an RDB\_node to map the attribute value to a DB2 database table and column.

For example, you might have an attribute key for an element <Order>. The value key must be fetched from a column PART\_KEY. The XML document looks like this:

```
<Order key="1">
```

**XML document:** In the DAD file, create an attribute\_node for key and indicate the table where the value of 1 is to be fetched.

**DAD file:**

```
<attribute_node name="key">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab">
 <column name="part_key"/>
 </RDB_node>
</attribute_node>
```

- 8. Optional: Specify the column type for the RDB\_node for each attribute\_node and text\_node. By doing so, you can use the DAD for both composition and decomposition. In composition, specifying the column type does not result in any additional data type checking. To specify the column types, add the attribute type to the column element. The following example defines the column type as an INTEGER:

```
<attribute_node name="key">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <column name="order_key" type="integer"/>
 </RDB_node>
</attribute_node>
```

- 9. Ensure that the ending tags are in the appropriate places:
  - a. Ensure that an ending </root\_node> tag is after the last </element\_node> tag.
  - b. Ensure that an ending </Xcollection> tag is after the </root\_node> tag.
  - c. Ensure that an ending </DAD> tag is after the </Xcollection> tag.

Call the dxxGenXML stored procedure to compose using the DAD. For information on dxxGenXML, see “dxxGenXML() stored procedure” on page 193.

**Related concepts:**

- “Mapping schemes for XML collections” on page 106
- “Requirements for RDB\_Node mapping” on page 110
- “Location paths” on page 113
- “DAD files for XML collections” on page 171
- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193

**Related tasks:**

- “Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping”
- “Managing data in XML collections” on page 94
- “Updating and deleting data in XML collections” on page 103

## Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping

You must first create a DAD file. Use the <RDB\_node> to specify DB2 database tables, columns, and conditions for an element or attribute node. The <RDB\_node> uses the following elements:

<b>table</b>	Defines the table that corresponds to the element.
<b>column</b>	Defines the column that contains the corresponding element.
<b>condition</b>	Optionally specifies a condition on which insertion into the column occurs.

The child elements that are used in the <RDB\_node> depend on the context of the node and use the following rules:

If the node type is:	RDB child element is used:		
	Table	Column	Condition
Root element	Yes	No	Yes <sup>1</sup>
Attribute	Yes	Yes	optional
Text	Yes	Yes	optional

<sup>1</sup> Required to show relationships between multiple tables.

**Procedure:**

To prepare a DAD file to use for decomposing an XML document using the RDB\_node mapping:

1. Create a file in any text editor. Create a DAD header by typing the following syntax:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "path/dad.dtd">
```

Where *path/dad.dtd* is the path and file name of the DTD for the DAD.

The DAD file must be either stored in an Integrated File System (IFS) directory, or created as a physical file member with a link in the IFS directory pointing to the member.

2. Insert the <DAD> </DAD> tags.
3. Insert the tags used for validating the DAD with a DTD or schema.
  - To validate the XML document with a DTD, insert the dtdid tag that associates the DAD file with the XML document DTD. For example:
 

```
<dtdid>dtd_name</dtdid>
```

- To validate the XML document with a schema, insert the schemabinding tag that associates the DAD file with the schema file. For example:

```
<schemabindings>
<nonamespace location="path/schema_name.xsd"/>
</schemabindings>
```

The dtdid or schema is useful only if you decide to validate the XML document. Use the validation tag to indicate whether DB2 XML Extender validates the XML document:

- If you want to validate the XML document, then type:

```
<validation>YES</validation>
```
- If you do not want to validate the XML document type:

```
<validation>NO</validation>
```

4. Insert `<XCollection>` `</XCollection>` tags to specify that you are using XML collections as the access and storage method for your XML data.
5. Add the following prolog information. If you need to specify an encoding value for internationalization, add the `ENCODING` attribute and value.

```
<prolog?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
```
6. Add the `<doctype>``</doctype>` tags. For example:

```
<doctype>! DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxxsample/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>
```
7. Define the `root_node` using the `<root_node>` `</root_node>` tags.
8. Inside the `root_node`, map the elements and attributes in the XML document to element nodes and attribute nodes that correspond to DB2 database data. These nodes provide a path from the XML data to the DB2 database data.
  - a. Define a top level, root element `element_node`. This `element_node` contains:
    - Table elements with a join condition to specify the collection.
    - Child elements
    - Attributes

To specify the table and condition:

- 1) Create an `RDB_node` element within an `element_node` element. For example:

```
<element_node name="name">
<RDB_node>
</RDB_node>
</element_node>
```

- 2) Define a `<table>` element for each table that contains data to be included in the XML document. For example, if you have three tables, `ORDER_TAB`, `PART_TAB`, and `SHIP_TAB`, that have column data to be in the document, create a table node for each. For example:

```
<RDB_node>
<table name="ORDER_TAB">
<table name="PART_TAB">
<table name="SHIP_TAB">
</RDB_node>
```

- 3) Define a join condition for the tables in the collection. The syntax is:

```
table_name.table_column = table_name.table_column AND
table_name.table_column = table_name.table_column ...
```

For example:

```
<RDB_node>
<table name="ORDER_TAB">
<table name="PART_TAB">
<table name="SHIP_TAB">
```

```

<condition>
 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
</condition>
</RDB_node>

```

- 4) Optional: Specify a primary key for each table. The primary key consists of a single column or multiple columns, called a composite key. To specify the primary key, add an attribute key to the table element of the RDB\_node. The following example defines a primary key for each of the tables in the RDB\_node of the root element\_node Order:

```

<element_node name="Order">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab" key="order_key"/>
 <table name="part_tab" key="part_key price"/>
 <table name="ship_tab" key="date mode"/>
 <condition>
 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
 </condition>
 </RDB_node>

```

The key attribute is required for decomposition and enabling a collection.

- b. Define an <element\_node> tag for each element in your XML document that maps to a column in a DB2 database table. For example:

```

<element_node name="name">
</element_node>

```

An element node can have one of the following types of elements:

**text\_node** To specify that the element has content to a DB2 database table It does not have child elements.

**attribute\_node** To specify an attribute.

**child elements** Children of the element\_node.

The text\_node contains an RDB\_node to map content to a DB2 database table and column name.

For example, you might have an XML element <Tax> for which you want to store the untagged content into a column called TAX. For example, the XML document would look like this:

```

<Tax>0.02</Tax>

```

In this case, you want the value 0.02 to be stored in the column TAX.

In the DAD file, you specify an <RDB\_node> tag to map an XML document or attribute values to the DB2 database table and column name.

**DAD file:**

```

<element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="tax"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>

```

The <RDB\_node> tag specifies that the value of the Tax element is a text value, the data is stored in the PART\_TAB table in the TAX column.

- c. Define an <attribute\_node> tag for each attribute in your XML document that maps to a column in a DB2 database table. For example:

```
<attribute_node name="key">
</attribute_node>
```

The attribute\_node has an RDB\_node to map the attribute value to a DB2 database table and column.

For example, you might have an attribute key for an Order element. The value key needs to be stored in a column PART\_KEY.

**XML document:**

```
<Order key="1">
```

In the DAD file, create an attribute\_node for key and indicate the table where to store the value of 1.

**DAD file:**

```
<attribute_node name="key">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab">
 <column name="part_key"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </attribute_node>
```

9. Specify the column type for the RDB\_node for each attribute\_node and text\_node. This ensures the correct data type for each column where the untagged data will be stored. To specify the column types, add the attribute type to the column element. The following example defines the column type as an INTEGER:

```
<attribute_node name="key">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <column name="order_key" type="integer"/>
 </RDB_node>
</attribute_node>
```

10. Ensure that the ending tags are in the appropriate places:
  - a. Ensure that an ending </root\_node> tag is after the last </element\_node> tag.
  - b. Ensure that an ending </Xcollection> tag is after the </root\_node> tag.
  - c. Ensure that an ending </DAD> tag is after the </Xcollection> tag.

Call the dxxShredXML stored procedure to decompose using the DAD. For information on dxxShredXML, see “dxxShredXML() stored procedure” on page 204.

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview” on page 204

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Decomposing XML documents into DB2 database data” on page 98





---

## **Part 3. Programming**

This part describes programming techniques for managing your XML data.



---

## Chapter 3. XML columns

This section describes how to manage data in XML columns using DB2.

---

### Managing data in XML columns

When you use XML columns to store data, you store an entire XML document in its native format as column data in DB2. This access and storage method allows you to keep the XML document intact, while giving you the ability to index and search the document, retrieve data from the document, and update the document.

After you enable a database for XML, the following user-defined types (UDTs), provided by XML Extender, are available for your use:

#### **XMLCLOB**

Use this UDT for XML document content that is stored as a character large object (CLOB) in DB2.

#### **XMLVARCHAR**

Use this UDT for XML document content that is stored as a VARCHAR in DB2.

#### **XMLFILE**

Use this UDT for an XML document that is stored in a file on a local file system.

You can create or alter application tables to have columns of XML UDT data type. These tables are known as XML tables.

After you enable a column in a table for XML, you can create the XML column and perform the following management tasks:

- Store XML documents in DB2
- Retrieve XML data or documents from DB2
- Update XML documents
- Delete XML data or documents

To perform all of these tasks, use the user-defined functions (UDFs) provided by XML Extender. Use default casting functions to store XML documents in DB2. Default casting functions cast the SQL base type to the XML Extender user-defined types and convert instances of a data type (origin) into instances of a different data type (target).

#### **Related concepts:**

- “Using indexes for XML column data” on page 79
- “XML columns as a storage and access method”

---

### XML columns as a storage and access method

There will be times when you want to store and maintain the document structure as it currently is. XML contains all the necessary information to create a set of documents.

For example, if you are a news publishing company that serves articles over the Web, you might want to maintain an archive of published articles. In such a scenario, XML Extender lets you store your complete or partial XML articles in a column of a DB2® table, which is the *XML column*, as shown in Figure 8.

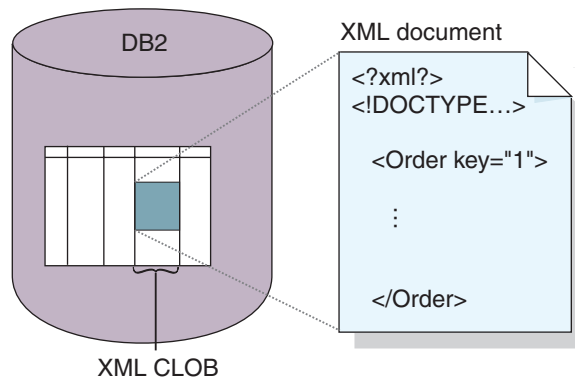


Figure 8. Storing structured XML documents in a DB2 table column

The XML column storage and access method allows you to manage your XML documents using DB2. You can store XML documents in a column of XML type and you can query the contents of the document to find a specific element or attribute. You can associate and store a DTD in DB2 for one or more documents. Additionally, you can map element and attribute content to DB2 tables, called *side tables*. These side tables can be indexed for improved query performance, but are not indexed automatically. The column that is used to store the document is called an XML column. It specifies that the column is used for the XML column storage and access method.

In the document access definition (DAD) file you enter `<Xcolumn>` and `</Xcolumn>` tags to denote that the storage and access method that you will use is XML column. The DAD will then map the XML element and attribute content to be stored in side tables.

Before you begin working with XML Extender to store your documents, you need to understand the structure of the XML document so that you can determine how to index elements and attributes in the document. When planning how to index the document, you need to determine:

- The XML user-defined type in which you will store the XML document
- The XML elements and attributes that your application will frequently search, so that their content can be stored in side tables and indexed to improve performance
- Whether or not you want to validate XML documents in the column with a DTD

---

## Defining and enabling an XML column

You use XML columns to store and access entire XML documents in the database. This storage method allows you to store documents using the XML file types, index the columns in side tables, and query or search XML documents.

Use XML columns when you want to store entire XML documents into a DB2 table column if the document is not going to be frequently updated or if you want to store intact XML documents.

If you want to map XML document structures to DB2 database tables so that you can compose XML documents from existing DB2 data or decompose XML documents into DB2 data, then you should use XML collections instead of XML columns.

**Procedure:**

To define and enable an XML column from the command line:

1. Create a document access definition (DAD) file.
2. Create a table in which the XML documents are stored.
3. Index side tables.

The XML column is created as an XML user data type. After these tasks are complete, you will be able to store XML documents in the column. These documents can then be updated, searched, and extracted.

**Related concepts:**

- “Lesson: Storing an XML document in an XML column” on page 7
- “Using indexes for XML column data”
- “Validating XML documents automatically” on page 55
- “XML columns as a storage and access method” on page 77

**Related tasks:**

- “Creating an XML table” on page 56
- “Indexing side tables” on page 62
- “Managing data in XML columns” on page 77

---

## Using indexes for XML column data

An important planning decision when using XML columns, is whether to index the side tables for XML column documents. This decision should be made based on how often you need to access the data and how critical performance is during structural searches.

When using XML columns, which contain entire XML documents, you can create side tables to contain columns of XML element or attribute values, then create indexes on these columns. You must determine the elements and attributes for which you need to create the index.

XML column indexing allows frequently queried data of general data types (such as integer, decimal, or date) to be indexed using the native DB2<sup>®</sup> index support from the database engine. The XML Extender extracts the values of XML elements or attributes from XML documents and stores them in the side tables, allowing you to create indexes on these side tables. You can specify each column of a side table with a location path that identifies an XML element or attribute and an SQL data type.

The XML Extender automatically populates the side table when you store XML documents in the XML column.

For fast search, create indexes on these columns using the DB2 *B-tree indexing* technology. See the DB2 documentation for more information on *B-tree indexing*.

You must keep the following considerations in mind when creating an index:

- For elements or attributes in an XML document that have *multiple occurrences*, you must create a separate side table for each XML element or attribute with multiple occurrences due to the complex structure of XML documents.
- You can create multiple indexes on an XML column.
- You can associate side tables with the application table using the ROOT ID.  
**Recommendation:** Use the primary key of the application table as the ROOT ID if the primary key is not a composite key.  
 If the single primary key does not exist in the application table, or for some reason you don't want to use it, XML Extender alters the application table to add a column DXXROOT\_ID, which stores a unique ID that is created at the insertion time. All side tables have a DXXROOT\_ID column with the unique ID. If the primary key is used as the ROOT ID, all side tables have a column with the same name and type as the primary key column in the application table, and the values of the primary keys are stored.
- If you enable an XML column for the DB2 Net Search Extender, you can also use the Net Search Extender's structural-text feature. The Net Search Extender has "section search" support, which extends the capability of a conventional full-text search by allowing search words to be matched within a specific document context that is specified by location paths. The *structural-text index* can be used with XML Extender's indexing on general SQL data types.

---

## Storing XML data

Using XML Extender, you can insert intact XML documents into an XML column. If you define side tables, XML Extender automatically updates these tables. When you store an XML document directly, XML Extender stores the base type as an XML type.

### Prerequisites:

- Ensure that you created or updated the DAD file.
- Determine what data type to use when you store the document.
- Choose a method (casting functions or UDFs) for storing the data in the DB2<sup>®</sup> table.

Specify an SQL INSERT statement that specifies the XML table and column to contain the XML document.

The XML Extender provides two methods for storing XML documents: default casting functions and storage UDFs.

Table 11 shows when to use each method.

Table 11. The XML Extender storage functions

If the DB2 database base type is ...	Store in DB2 database as ...			
	XMLVARCHAR	XMLCLOB	XMLDBCLOB	XMLFILE
...				
VARCHAR	XMLVARCHAR()	N/A	N/A	XMLFile FromVarchar()

Table 11. The XML Extender storage functions (continued)

If the DB2 database base type is ...	Store in DB2 database as ...			
	XMLVARCHAR	XMLCLOB	XMLDBCLOB	XMLFILE
CLOB	N/A	XMLCLOB()	XMLDBCLOB, casting function	XMLFileFromCLOB()
FILE	XMLVarcharFromFile()	XMLCLOBFromFile()	XMLDBCLOBFromFile, UDF	XMLFILE

## Default casting functions for storing XML data

For each UDT, a default casting function exists to cast the SQL base type to the UDT. You can use the casting functions provided by XML Extender in your VALUES clause to insert data. Table 12 shows the provided casting functions:

Table 12. The XML Extender default casting functions

Casting function	Return type	Description
XMLVARCHAR(VARCHAR)	XMLVARCHAR	Input from memory buffer of VARCHAR
XMLCLOB(CLOB)	XMLCLOB	Input from memory buffer of CLOB or a CLOB locator
XMLFILE(VARCHAR)	XMLFILE	Store only the file name

For example, the following statement inserts a cast VARCHAR type into the XMLVARCHAR type:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab
VALUES('123456', 'Sriram Srinivasan', DB2XML.XMLVarchar(:xml_buff))
```

## Storage UDFs for storing XML data

For each XML Extender UDT, a storage UDF exists to import data into DB2 from a resource other than its base type. For example, if you want to import an XML file document to DB2 database as an XMLCLOB data type, you can use the function XMLCLOBFromFile().

Table 13 shows the storage functions provided by the XML Extender.

Table 13. The XML Extender storage UDFs

Storage user-defined function	Return type	Description
XMLVarcharFromFile()	XMLVARCHAR	Reads an XML document from a file on the server and returns the value of the XMLVARCHAR data type. Optional: Specify the encoding of the file.

Table 13. The XML Extender storage UDFs (continued)

Storage user-defined function	Return type	Description
XMLCLOBFromFile()	XMLCLOB	Reads an XML document from a file on the server and returns the value of the XMLCLOB data type. Optional: Specify the encoding of the file.
XMLFileFromVarchar()	XMLFILE	Reads an XML document from memory as VARCHAR data, writes the document to an external file, and returns the value of the XMLFILE data type, which is the file name. Optional: Specify the encoding of the external file.
XMLFileFromCLOB()	XMLFILE	Reads an XML document from memory as CLOB data or as a CLOB locator, writes the document to an external file, and returns the value of the XMLFILE data type, which is the file name. Optional: Specify the encoding of the external file.

For example, using the XMLCLOBFromFile() function, the following statement stores a record in an XML table as an XMLCLOB:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab(ID, NAME, ORDER)
VALUES('1234', 'MyNameT',
XMLCLOBFromFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'))
```

The example imports the XML document from the file named /dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml into the column ORDER in the table SALES\_TAB.

## Method for retrieving an XML document

Using XML Extender, you can retrieve either an entire document or the contents of elements and attributes. When you retrieve an XML column directly, the XML Extender returns the UDT as the column type. For details about retrieving data, see the following sections:

- “Retrieving an entire XML document” on page 83
- “Retrieving element contents and attribute values from XML documents” on page 85

The XML Extender provides two methods for retrieving data: default casting functions and the Content() overloaded UDF. Table 14 on page 83 shows when to use each method.



Table 14. The XML Extender retrieval functions

When the XML type is ...	Retrieve from DB2 database as ...		
	VARCHAR	CLOB	FILE
XMLVARCHAR	VARCHAR	N/A	Content() UDF
XMLCLOB	N/A	XMLCLOB	Content() UDF
XMLFILE	N/A	Content() UDF	FILE

## Retrieving an entire XML document

### Procedure:

To retrieve an entire XML document:

1. Ensure that you stored the XML document in an XML table and determine what data you want to retrieve.
2. Choose a method (casting functions or UDFs) for retrieving the data in the DB2 database table.
3. If you are using the overloaded Content() UDF, determine the data type of the data that is being retrieved, and which data type is to be exported.
4. The XML column from which the element or attribute is to be extracted must be defined as either an XMLVARCHAR, XMLCLOB as LOCATOR, or XMLFILE data type.

Specify an SQL query that specifies the XML table and column from which to retrieve the XML document.

### Default casting functions for retrieving XML data

The default casting function provided by DB2 database for UDTs converts an XML UDT to an SQL base type, and then operates on it. In your SELECT statement, you can use the casting functions that are provided by XML Extender to retrieve data. Table 15 shows the provided casting functions.

Table 15. The XML Extender default cast functions

Casting used in SELECT clause	Return type	Description
varchar(XMLVARCHAR)	VARCHAR	XML document in VARCHAR
clob(XMLCLOB)	CLOB	XML document in CLOB
varchar(XMLFile)	VARCHAR	XML file name in VARCHAR

For example, the following SQL statement retrieves the XMLVARCHAR column, order, from the SALES\_TAB table, casts the column to VARCHAR, and finally passes the column as a parameter to the LENGTH function. The LENGTH function does not accept a parameter of type XMLVARCHAR, which requires casting.

```
SELECT DB2XML.XMLVarchar(order) from SALES_TAB
```

### Using the Content() UDF for retrieving XML data

Use the Content() UDF to retrieve the document content from external storage to memory, or export the document from internal storage to an external file, which is a file that is external to DB2 database on the DB2 database server.

For example, you might have your XML document stored as an XMLFILE data type. If you want to operate on it in memory, you can use the Content() UDF, which can take an XMLFILE data type as input and return a CLOB.

The Content() UDF performs two different retrieval functions, depending on the specified data type. It can:

- Retrieve a document from external storage and put it in memory.

You can use Content() UDF to retrieve the XML document to a memory buffer or a CLOB *locator* (a host variable with a value that represents a single LOB value in the database server) when the document is stored as the external file.

Use the following function syntax, where *xmlobj* is the XML column being queried:

**XMLFILE to CLOB:**

Content(*xmlobj* XMLFile)

- Retrieve a document from internal storage and export it to an external file.

You can use the Content() UDF to retrieve an XML document that is stored inside DB2 database as an XMLCLOB data type and export it to a file on the database server file system. The Content() UDF returns the name of the file as a VARCHAR data type.

Use the following function syntax:

**XML type to external file:**

Content(*xmlobj* XML type, *filename* varchar(512), *targetencoding* varchar(100))

Where:

*xmlobj* Is the name of the XML column from which the XML content is to be retrieved. *xmlobj* can be of type XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB.

*filename*

Is the name of the external file in which the XML data is to be stored.

*targetencoding*

Optional: Specifies the encoding of the output file.

In the example below, a small C program segment with embedded SQL statements (SQL statements coded within an application program) shows how an XML document is retrieved from a file to memory. This example assumes that the data type of the ORDER column is XMLFILE.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
 SQL TYPE IS CLOB_LOCATOR xml_buff;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO SALES_DB;
EXEC SQL DECLARE c1 CURSOR FOR
 SELECT Content(order) from sales_tab
EXEC SQL OPEN c1;
 do {
EXEC SQL FETCH c1 INTO :xml_buff;
 if (SQLCODE != 0) {
 break;}
 else { /* do whatever you need to do with the XML doc in buffer */}
 }
EXEC SQL CLOSE c1;
EXEC SQL CONNECT RESET;
```

## Retrieving element contents and attribute values from XML documents

You can retrieve (extract) the content of an element or the value of an attribute from one or more XML documents (single document or collection document search). The XML Extender provides user-defined extracting functions that you can specify in the SQL SELECT clause for each of the SQL data types.

Retrieving element content and attribute values is useful when developing your applications, because you can access XML data as relational data. For example, you might have 1000 XML documents that are stored in the ORDER column in the SALES\_TAB table. To retrieve the names of all customers who have ordered items over \$2500, use the following SQL statement with the extracting UDF in the SELECT clause:

```
SELECT extractVarchar(Order, '/Order/Customer/Name') from sales_order_view
WHERE price > 2500.00
```

In this example, the extracting UDF retrieves the content of the <customer> element from the ORDER column and stores it as a VARCHAR data type. The location path is /Order/Customer/Name. Additionally, the number of returned values is reduced by using a WHERE clause, which specifies that only the contents of the <customer> element with a sub-element <ExtendedPrice> that has a value greater than 2500.00.

Table 16 on page 86 shows the UDFs that you can use to extract element content and attribute values, using the following syntax for scalar functions.

### Syntax:

`extract` *retrieved\_datatype*(*xmlobj*, *path*)

*retrieved\_datatype*

The data type that is returned from the extracting function; it can be one of the following types:

- INTEGER
- SMALLINT
- DOUBLE
- REAL
- CHAR
- VARCHAR
- CLOB
- DATE
- TIME
- TIMESTAMP

*xmlobj* The name of the XML column from which the element or attribute is to be extracted. This column must be defined as one of the following XML user-defined types:

- XMLVARCHAR
- XMLCLOB as LOCATOR
- XMLFILE

*path* The location path of the element or attribute in the XML document (such as /Order/Customer/Name).

**Restriction:** Extracting UDFs can support location paths that have predicates with attributes, but not elements. For example, the following predicate is supported:

```
'/Order/Part[@color="black "]/ExtendedPrice'
```

The following predicate is not supported:

```
'/Order/Part/Shipment/[Shipdate < "11/25/00"]'
```

Table 16 shows the extracting functions, both in scalar and table format.

*Table 16. The XML Extender extracting functions*

Scalar function	Returned column name (table function)	Return type
extractInteger()	returnedInteger	INTEGER
extractSmallint()	returnedSmallint	SMALLINT
extractDouble()	returnedDouble	DOUBLE
extractReal()	returnedReal	REAL
extractChar()	returnedChar	CHAR
extractVarchar()	returnedVarchar	VARCHAR
extractCLOB()	returnedCLOB	CLOB
extractDate()	returnedDate	DATE
extractTime()	returnedTime	TIME
extractTimestamp()	returnedTimestamp	TIMESTAMP

**Scalar function example:** In the following example, one value is inserted with the attribute key value of 1. The value is extracted as an integer and automatically converted to a DECIMAL type.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(key decimal(3,2));
INSERT into t1
 (SELECT db2xml.extractInteger(db2xml.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order[@Key="1"]/@Key')
 FROM db2xml.onerow) ;
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:** In the following example, each key value (@Key) for the sales order is extracted as an INTEGER.

```
SELECT * from table(DB2XML.extractIntegers(DB2XML.XMLFile
 ('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'), '/Order/@Key')) as x;
```

---

## Updating XML data

With XML Extender, you can update the entire XML document by replacing the XML column data, or you can update the values of specified elements or attributes.

### Procedure

To update XML data:

1. The XML document must be stored in an XML table.
2. You must know what data you want to retrieve.
3. You must choose a method for updating the data in the DB2 database table (casting functions or UDFs).
4. Specify an SQL query that specifies the XML table and column to update.

## Updating an entire XML document

You can update an XML document by using a default casting function, or by using a storage UDF.

### Updating with a default casting function

For each user-defined type (UDT), a default casting function exists to cast the SQL base type to the UDT. You can use the XML Extender-provided casting functions to update the XML document.

For example, the following statement updates the XMLVARCHAR type from the cast VARCHAR type, assuming that `xml_buf` is a host variable that is defined as a VARCHAR type.

```
EXEC SQL UPDATE sales_tab SET=DB2XML.XMLVarchar(:xml_buf)
```

### Updating XML documents with a storage UDF

For each of the XML Extender UDTs, a storage UDF exists to import data into DB2 database from a resource other than its base type. You can use a storage UDF to update the entire XML document by replacing it.

The following example updates the XML object from the file named `/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml` to the ORDER column in the SALES\_TAB table.

```
UPDATE sales_tab
 set order = db2xml.XMLVarcharFromFile('
/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml')
WHERE sales_person = 'MyName'
```

## Updating specific elements and attributes of an XML document

Use the Update UDF to make specific changes, rather than updating the entire document. When you use this UDF, you specify the location path of the element or attribute whose value will be replaced. You do not need to edit the XML document; XML Extender makes the change for you.

### Syntax:

```
Update(xmlobj, path, value)
```

The syntax has the following components:

*xmlobj* The name of the XML column for which the value of the element or attribute is to be updated.

*path* The location path of the element or attribute that is to be updated.

*value* The new value that is to be updated.

For example, the following statement replaces the value of the <Customer> element with IBM:

```
UPDATE sales_tab
 set order = db2xml.Update(order, '/Order/Customer/Name', 'IBM')
WHERE sales_person = 'Sriram Srinivasan'
```

**Multiple occurrence:** When you specify a location path in the Update UDF, the content of every element or attribute with a matching path is updated with the supplied value. If a location path occurs in a document more than once, the Update UDF replaces all of the existing values with the value provided in the *value* parameter.

---

## Methods for searching XML documents

Searching XML data is similar to retrieving XML data: both techniques retrieve data for further manipulation but they search by using the content of the WHERE clause as the criteria for retrieval.

The XML Extender provides several methods for searching XML documents that are stored in an XML column. You can:

- Search document structure and return results based on element content or attribute values.
- Search a view of the XML column and its side tables.
- Search the side tables directly for better performance.
- Search using extracting UDFs with WHERE clauses.
- Use the DB2<sup>®</sup> Net Search Extender to search column data within the structural content for a text string.

With XML Extender you can use indexes to quickly search columns in side tables. These columns contain XML element content or attribute values that are extracted from XML documents. For example, in the purchase order example, you could search for all orders that have an extended price of over 2500.00.

Additionally, you can use the Net Search Extender to do structural text search or full text search. For example, you might have a column called RESUME that contains resumes in XML format. If you want to find the names of all applicants who have Java<sup>™</sup> skills, you could use the DB2 Net Search Extender to search on the XML documents for all resumes where the <skill> element contains the character string "JAVA". For more information, see *DB2 Database Extenders: Net Search Extender Administration and Programming*.

The following section describes search methods:

- "Searching the XML document by structure"

### Searching the XML document by structure

Using XML Extender search features, you can search XML data in a column based on the document structure (the elements and attributes in the document).

#### Procedures:

To search the data, you can:

- Directly query the side tables.
- Use a *joined view*.
- Use extracting UDFs.

These search methods are described in the following examples. The SALES\_TAB table has an XML column named ORDER. This column has three side tables, ORDER\_SIDE\_TAB, PART\_SIDE\_TAB, and SHIP\_SIDE\_TAB. A default view, sales\_order\_view, was specified when the ORDER column was enabled. This view joins these tables using the following CREATE VIEW statement:

```
CREATE VIEW sales_order_view(invoice_num, sales_person, order,
 order_key, customer, part_key, price, date)
AS
SELECT sales_tab.invoice_num, sales_tab.sales_person, sales_tab.order,
 order_side_tab.order_key, order_side_tab.customer,
```

```

 part_side_tab.part_key, ship_side_tab.date
FROM sales_tab, order_side_tab, part_side_tab, ship_side_tab
WHERE sales_tab.invoice_num = order_side_tab.invoice_num
 AND sales_tab.invoice_num = part_side_tab.invoice_num
 AND sales_tab.invoice_num = ship_side_tab.invoice_num

```

### Example: searching with direct query on side tables

Direct query with subquery search provides the best performance for a structural search when the side tables are indexed.

#### Procedure:

You can use a query or subquery to search side tables correctly.

For example, the following statement uses a query and subquery to directly search a side table:

```

SELECT sales_person from sales_tab
WHERE invoice_num in
 (SELECT invoice_num from part_side_tab
 WHERE price > 2500.00)

```

In this example, invoice\_num is the primary key in the SALES\_TAB table.

### Example: searching from a joined view

The XML Extender can create a default view that joins the application table and the side tables using a unique ID. You can use this default view, or any view that joins an application table and side tables, to search column data and query the side tables. This method provides a single virtual view of the application table and its side tables. However, the more side tables that are created, the longer the query takes to run.

**Tip:** You can use the root ID, or DXXROOT\_ID (created by XML Extender), to join the tables when you create your own view.

For example, the following statement searches the view named SALES\_ORDER\_VIEW and returns the values from the SALES\_PERSON column where the line item orders have a price greater than 2500.00.

```

SELECT sales_person from sales_order_view
WHERE price > 2500.00

```

### Example: searching with extracting UDFs

You can also use XML Extender's extracting UDFs to search on elements and attributes, when you did not create indexes or side tables for the application table. Using the extracting UDFs to scan the XML data is expensive and should only be used with WHERE clauses that restrict the number of XML documents that are included in the search.

The following statement searches with an extracting XML Extender UDF:

```

SELECT sales_person from sales_tab
WHERE extractVarchar(order, '/Order/Customer/Name')
 like '%IBM%'
AND invoice_num > 100

```

In this example, the extracting UDF extracts </Order/Customer/Name> elements that contain the substring IBM®.

### Example: searching on elements or attributes with multiple occurrence

When you search on elements or attributes that have multiple occurrence, use the DISTINCT clause to prevent duplicate values.

The following statement searches with the DISTINCT clause:

```
SELECT sales_person from sales_tab
 WHERE invoice_num in
 (SELECT DISTINCT invoice_num from part_side_tab
 WHERE price > 2500.00)
```

In this example, the DAD file specifies that /Order/Part/Price has multiple occurrence and creates a side table, PART\_SIDE\_TAB, for it. The PART\_SIDE\_TAB table might have more than one row with the same invoice\_num. Using DISTINCT returns only unique values.

---

## Deleting XML documents

Use the SQL DELETE statement to delete the row containing an XML document from an XML column. You can specify a WHERE clause to delete specific documents.

For example, the following statement deletes all documents that have a value for <ExtendedPrice> greater than 2500.00:

```
DELETE from sales_tab
 WHERE invoice_num in
 (SELECT invoice_num from part_side_tab
 WHERE price > 2500.00)
```

The corresponding rows in the side tables are automatically deleted.

---

## Limitations when invoking functions from Java Database (JDBC)

When using parameter markers in functions, a JDBC restriction requires that the parameter marker for the function must be cast to the data type of the column into which the returned data will be inserted. The function selection logic does not know what data type the argument might turn out to be, and it cannot resolve the reference.

For example, JDBC cannot resolve the following code:

```
DB2XML.XMLdefault_casting_function(data_type)
```

You can use the CAST specification to provide a type for the parameter marker, such as VARCHAR, and then the function selection logic can proceed:

```
DB2XML.XMLdefault_casting_function(CAST(? AS cast_type(length)))
```

### Examples:

In the following examples, The Sales\_Tab table has three columns. The invoice\_num column has a data type of Char(6), the sales\_person column has a data type of Varchar(20), and the order column has a data type of XMLVarchar.

**Example 1:** In the following example, the parameter marker is cast as VARCHAR. The parameter being passed is an XML document, which is cast as VARCHAR(1000) and inserted into the column ORDER.



```
String query = "insert into sales_tab(invoice_num, sales_person, order) values
(?,?,DB2XML.XMLVarchar(cast (? as varchar(1000))))";
```

**Example 2:** In the following example, the parameter marker is cast as VARCHAR. The parameter being passed is a file name and its contents are converted to VARCHAR and inserted into the column ORDER.

```
String query = "insert into sales_tab(invoice_num, sales_person, order) values
(?,?,DB2XML.XMLVarcharfromFILE(cast (? as varchar(1000))))";
```



---

## Chapter 4. Managing data in XML collections

---

### XML collections as a storage and access method

Relational data is either *decomposed* from incoming XML documents or used to *compose* outgoing XML documents. Decomposed data is the untagged content of an XML document stored in one or more database tables. Or, XML documents are composed from existing data in one or more database tables. If your data is to be shared with other applications, you might want to be able to compose and decompose incoming and outgoing XML documents and manage the data as necessary to take advantage of the relational capabilities of DB2®. This type of XML document storage is called *XML collection*.

An example of an XML collection is shown in Figure 9.

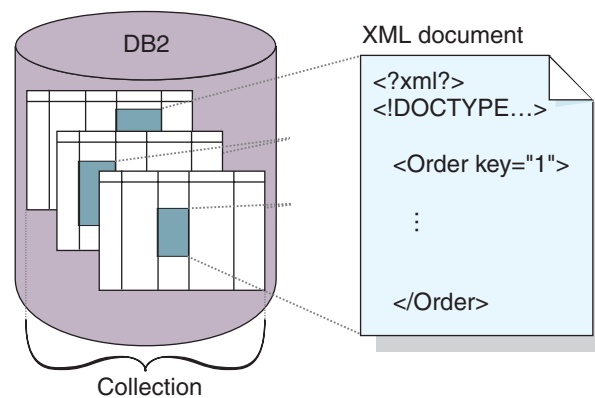


Figure 9. Storing documents as untagged data in DB2 tables

The XML collection is defined in a DAD file, which specifies how elements and attributes are mapped to one or more relational tables. The collection is a set of columns, associated with a DAD file, that contain the data in a particular XML document or set of XML documents. You can define a collection name by enabling it, and then refer to it by name when issuing a stored procedure to compose or decompose XML documents. It is called an enabled XML collection. The collection is given a name so that it is easily run with stored procedures that compose and decompose the XML documents.

When you define a collection in the DAD file, you use one of two types of mapping schemes, *SQL mapping* or *RDB\_node mapping* that define the tables, columns, and conditions used to associate XML data with DB2 tables. SQL mapping uses SQL SELECT statements to define the DB2 tables and conditions used for the collection. RDB\_node mapping uses an XPath-based relational database node, or RDB\_node, which has child elements.

Stored procedures are provided to compose or decompose XML documents. Stored procedure names are qualified by DB2XML, which is the *schema name* of XML Extender.

---

## Managing data in XML collections

An XML collection is a set of relational tables that contain data that is mapped to XML documents. This access and storage method lets you compose an XML document from existing data, decompose an XML document, and use XML as an interchange method.

The relational tables that make up the collection can be new tables, or existing tables that have data that is to be used with XML Extender to compose XML documents for your applications. Column data in these tables does not contain XML tags; it contains the content and values that are associated with elements and attributes, respectively. You use stored procedures to store, retrieve, update, search, and delete XML collection data.

### Preparing to compose XML documents from DB2 data

Composition is the generation of a set of XML documents from relational data in an XML collection. You can compose XML documents using stored procedures. To use these stored procedures, create a document access definition (DAD) file. A DAD file specifies the mapping between the XML document and the DB2 table structure. The stored procedures use the DAD file to compose the XML document.

#### Procedure::

Before you begin composing XML documents:

1. Map the structure of the XML document to the relational tables that contain the contents of the element and attribute values.
2. Select a mapping method: SQL mapping or RDB\_node mapping.
3. Prepare the DAD file.

The XML Extender provides four stored procedures to compose XML documents:

- dxxGenXML()
- dxxGenXMLCLOB()
- dxxRetrieveXML()
- dxxRetrieveXMLCLOB

#### Composing documents using dxxGenXML

Use the dxxGenXML stored procedure to compose the document. You do not have to enable a collection to use this stored procedure. The stored procedure uses a DAD file instead.

The dxxGenXML stored procedure constructs XML documents using data that is stored in XML collection tables, which are specified by the <Xcollection> element in the DAD file. This stored procedure inserts each XML document as a row into a result table. You can open a cursor on the result table and fetch the result set. The result table must be created by the application and always has one column of VARCHAR, CLOB, XMLVARCHAR, or XMLCLOB type that is used to store the XML data.

Additionally, if the value of the validation element in the DAD file is YES, XML Extender adds the column DXX\_VALID of INTEGER type into the result table if the DXX\_VALID column is not in the table yet. The XML Extender inserts a value of 1 for a valid XML document and 0 for an invalid document.

The stored procedure `dxxGenXML` lets you specify the maximum number of rows that are to be generated in the result. Specifying a maximum number of rows can shorten processing time. The stored procedure returns the actual number of rows in the table and any return codes and messages.

The corresponding stored procedure for decomposition is `dxxShredXML`; it also takes the DAD as the input parameter and does not require that the XML collection be enabled.

**Procedure:**

To compose an XML document using the `dxxGenXML` stored procedure, embed a stored procedure call in your application using the following stored procedure declaration:

```
dxxGenXML(CLOB(100K) DAD, /* input */
 char(32) resultTabName, /* input */
 char(30) result_column, /* input */
 char(30) valid_column, /* input */
 integer overrideType, /* input */
 varchar(varchar_value) override, /* input */
 integer maxRows, /* input */
 integer numRows, /* output */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Example:** The following example composes an XML document:

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) dad; /* DAD */

char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL */
char override[2]; /* override, will set to NULL*/
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short dad_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcol_ind;
short ovtpe_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxx/dad
/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
```

```

if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &dad.data,
 1, FILE_SIZE, file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf ("Error reading dad file
 /dxx/dad
 /getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n",);
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}
/* initialize host variable and indicators */
strcpy(result_tab,"xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_colname,"xmlorder")
valid_colname = '\0';
override[0] = '\0';
overrideType = NO_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 500;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
dad_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_ind = -1;
ovtype_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.dxxGenXML"
 (:dad:dad_ind;
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcol_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind,:override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,:returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
 return rc;

```

After the stored procedure is called, the result table contains 250 rows because the SQL query specified in the DAD file generated 250 XML documents.

### Composing documents using dxxRetrieveXML

The dxxRetrieveXML stored procedure works in the same way as the dxxGenXML stored procedure, except that it takes the name of an enabled XML collection instead of a DAD file. When an XML collection is enabled, a DAD file is stored in the XML\_USAGE table. Therefore, XML Extender retrieves the DAD file and uses it to compose the document in the same way as the dxxGenXML stored procedure.

The corresponding stored procedure for decomposition is `dxxInsertXML`; it also takes the name of an enabled XML collection.

**Procedure:**

To compose an XML collection using the `dxxRetrieveXML` stored procedure, embed a stored procedure call in your application using the following stored procedure declaration:

```
dxxRetrieveXML(
 varchar(collectionName) collectionName /*input*/
 varchar(resultTabName) resultTable /*input*/
 varchar(resultColumn) resultColumn /*input*/
 varchar(validColumn) validColumn /*input*/
 integer overrideType /*input*/
 varchar(varchar_value) override /*input*/
 integer maxRows /*input*/
 integer numRows /*output*/
 integer returnCode /*output*/
 varchar(1024) returnMsg /*output*/
```

**Example:** The following example is of a call to `dxxRetrieveXML()`. It assumes that a result table is created with the name of `XML_ORDER_TAB` and that the table has one column of `XMLVARCHAR` type.

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL*/
char override[2]; /* override, will set to NULL*/
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcol_ind;
short ovtpe_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initial host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collection, "sales_ord");
strcpy(result_tab, "xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_col, "xmlorder");
valid_colname[0] = '\0';
override[0] = '\0';
overrideType = NO_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 500;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
```

```

collectionName_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_ind = -1;
ovtype_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXRETRIEVEXML" (:collectionName:collectionName_ind,
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcol_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind,:override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

```

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193
- “DAD files for XML collections” on page 171
- “Location paths” on page 113
- “Mapping schemes for XML collections” on page 106
- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93

**Related tasks:**

- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66
- “Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 70
- “Searching XML collections” on page 104
- “Stylesheets for an XML collection” on page 113
- “Updating and deleting data in XML collections” on page 103

---

## Decomposing XML documents into DB2 database data

To decompose an XML document is to parse down the data inside of an XML document and store it in relational tables. The XML Extender provides stored procedures to decompose XML data from source XML documents into relational tables. To use these stored procedures, you must create a DAD file, which specifies the mapping between the XML document and DB2 database table structure. The stored procedures use the DAD file to decompose the XML document.

Before you decompose an XML document into DB2 database data:

1. Map the structure of the XML document to the relational tables that contain the contents of the elements and attributes values.
2. Prepare the DAD file, using RDB\_node mapping.
3. Optional: Enable the XML collection.

**Procedure::**



Use one of the two stored procedures provided by DB2 XML Extender to decompose XML documents, `dxxShredXML()` or `dxxInsertXML()`.

### **dxxShredXML()**

This stored procedure is used for applications that do occasional updates or for applications that do not want the overhead of administering the XML data. The stored procedure `dxxShredXML()` does not require an enabled collection; it uses a DAD file instead.

The stored procedure `dxxShredXML()` takes two input parameters, a DAD file and the XML document that is to be decomposed; it returns two output parameters: a return code and a return message. It inserts data from an XML document into an XML collection according to the `<Xcollection>` specification in the input DAD file. The `dxxShredXML()` stored procedure then decomposes the XML document, and inserts untagged XML data into the tables specified in the DAD file. The tables that are used in the `<Xcollection>` of the DAD file are assumed to exist, and the columns are assumed to meet the data types specified in the DAD mapping. If this is not true, an error message is returned.

The corresponding stored procedure for composition is `dxxGenXML()`; it also takes the DAD as the input parameter and does not require that the XML collection be enabled.

### **To decompose an XML collection with dxxShredXML()**

Embed a stored procedure call in your application using the following stored procedure declaration:

```
dxxShredXML(CLOB(100K) DAD, /* input */
 CLOB(1M) xmlobj, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Example:** The following example is a call to `dxxShredXML()`:

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) dad; /* DAD */

SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) xmlDoc; /* input xml document */

long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short dad_ind;
short xmlDoc_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxx
/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &dad.data, 1, FILE_SIZE,
 file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf ("Error reading dad file getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 }
}
```

```

 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
 }
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}

/* Initialize the XML CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxx
/xml/getstart_xcollection.xml", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &xmlDoc.data, 1,
 FILE_SIZE, file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf ("Error reading xml file
 getstart_xcollection.xml \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 xmlDoc.length = file_length;
 }
else {
 printf("Error opening xml file \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}

/* initialize host variable and indicators */
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
dad_ind = 0;
xmlDoc_ind = 0;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXSHREDXML" (:dad:dad_ind,
 :xmlDoc:xmlDoc_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
 return rc;

```

### **dxxInsertXML()**

This stored procedure is used for applications that make regular updates. The stored procedure `dxxInsertXML()` works the same as `dxxShredXML()`, except that `dxxInsertXML()` takes an enabled XML collection as its first input parameter.

The stored procedure `dxxInsertXML()` inserts data from an XML document into an enabled XML collection, which is associated with a DAD file. The DAD file contains specifications for the collection tables and the mapping. The collection tables are checked or created according to the specifications in the `<Xcollection>`. The stored procedure `dxxInsertXML()` then decomposes the XML document according to the mapping, and it inserts untagged XML data into the tables of the named XML collection.

The corresponding stored procedure for composition is `dxxRetrieveXML()`; it also takes the name of an enabled XML collection.

**Procedure:**

To decompose an XML collection: `dxxInsertXML()`:

Embed a stored procedure call in your application using the following stored procedure declaration:

```
dxxInsertXML(char(
) collectionName, /* input */
 CLOB(1M) xmlobj, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Example:** The following is an example of a call to `dxxInsertXML()`:

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) xmlDoc; /* input xml document */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short xmlDoc_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */

file_handle = fopen("dxxsamples/dad
/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &dad.data, 1, FILE_SIZE,
 file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf("Error reading dad file getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}

/* initialize host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collectionName, "sales_ord");
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
collectionName_ind = 0;
xmlDoc_ind = 0;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "db2xml.DXXINSERTXML"
 (:collection_name:collection_name_ind,
```

```

:xmlDoc:xmlDoc_ind,
:returnCode:returnCode_ind,
:returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
return rc;

```

## Enabling an XML collection for decomposition

In most cases, you need to enable an XML collection before using the stored procedures. Cases where you must enable the collections are:

- When decomposing XML documents into new tables, an XML collection must be enabled because all tables in the XML collection are created by the XML Extender when the collection is enabled.
- When keeping the sequence of elements and attributes that have multiple occurrence is important. The XML Extender preserves only the sequence order of elements or attributes of multiple occurrence for tables that are created when a collection is enabled. When XML documents are decomposed into existing relational tables, the sequence order is not guaranteed to be preserved.

See the section about the `dxxadm` administration command for information about the `enable_collection` option.

If you want to pass the DAD file when the tables already exist in your database, you do not need to enable an XML collection.

## Decomposition table size limits

Decomposition uses `RDB_node` mapping to specify how an XML document is decomposed into DB2 database tables by extracting the element and attribute values and storing them in table rows. The values from each XML document are stored in one or more DB2 database tables.

Using multiple-occurring elements (elements with location paths that can occur more than once in the XML structure) affects the number of rows. For example, a document that contains an element `<Part>` that occurs 20 times might be decomposed as 20 rows in a table.

### Related concepts:

- “XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview” on page 204

### Related tasks:

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Decomposing an XML collection by using `RDB_node` mapping” on page 70

### Related reference:

- “`dxxInsertXML()` stored procedure” on page 206
- “`dxxShredXML()` stored procedure” on page 204

---

## Updating and deleting data in XML collections

You can update, delete, search, and retrieve XML collections. However, the purpose of using an XML collection is to store or retrieve untagged data in database tables. The data in existing database tables has nothing to do with any incoming XML documents; update, delete, and search operations consist of normal SQL access to these tables.

The XML Extender provides the ability to perform operations on the data from an XML collection view. You can run SQL UPDATE and DELETE statements to modify the data that is used for composing XML documents, and therefore, update the XML collection. Performing SQL operations on the collection tables affects the generated documents.

- To update a document, do not delete a row containing the primary key of the table, which is the foreign key row of the other collection tables. When the primary key and foreign key row is deleted, the document is deleted.
- To replace or delete elements and attribute values, you can delete and insert rows in lower-level tables without deleting the document.
- To delete a document, delete the row that composes the top element\_node specified in the DAD.

### Updating data in an XML collection

The XML Extender allows you to update untagged data that is stored in XML collection tables. By updating XML collection table values, you are updating the text of an XML element, or the value of an XML attribute. Updates can also delete an instance of data from multiple-occurring elements or attributes.

From an SQL point of view, changing the value of the element or attribute is an update operation, and deleting an instance of an element or attribute is a delete operation. From an XML point of view, if the element text or attribute value of the root element\_node exists, the XML document still exists and is, therefore, an update operation. SQL operations on collection tables affect documents that will be generated from the tables.

**Requirements:** When you update data in an XML collection, observe the following rules:

- Specify the primary-foreign key relationship among the collection tables when the existing tables have this relationship. If they do not, ensure that there are columns that can be joined.
- Include the join condition that is specified in the DAD file:
  - For SQL mapping, include the join condition in the <SQL\_stmt> element.
  - For RDB\_node mapping, include the join condition in the top <condition> element of the root element node.

### Updating element and attribute values

In an XML collection, element text and attribute values are all mapped to columns in database tables. Regardless of whether the column data previously exists or is decomposed from incoming XML documents, you replace the data using the normal SQL update technique.

To update an element or attribute value, specify a WHERE clause in the SQL UPDATE statement that contains the join condition that is specified in the DAD file.

**Example:**

```
UPDATE SHIP_TAB
 SET MODE = 'BOAT'
 WHERE MODE='AIR' AND PART_KEY in
 (SELECT PART_KEY from PART_TAB WHERE ORDER_KEY=68)
```

The <ShipMode> element value is updated from AIR to BOAT in the SHIP\_TAB table, where the key is 68.

**Deleting element and attribute instances**

To update composed XML documents by eliminating multiple-occurring elements or attributes, delete a row containing the field value that corresponds to the element or attribute value, using the WHERE clause. If you do not delete the row that contains the values for the top element\_node, deleting element values is considered an update of the XML document.

For example, in the following DELETE statement, you are deleting a <shipment> element by specifying a unique value of one of its sub-elements.

```
DELETE from SHIP_TAB
 WHERE DATE='1999-04-12'
```

Specifying a DATE value deletes the row that matches this value. The composed document originally contained two <shipment> elements, but now contains one.

**Deleting an XML document from an XML collection**

You can delete an XML document that is composed from a collection. This means that if you have an XML collection that composes multiple XML documents, you can delete one of these composed documents. Performing SQL operations on the collection tables affects the generated documents.

**Procedure:**

To delete the document, delete a row in the table that composes the top element\_node that is specified in the DAD file. This table contains the primary key for the top-level collection table and the foreign key for the lower-level tables. Deleting the document with this method works only if the primary-key and foreign-key constraints are fully specified in the SQL and if the relationship of the tables shown in the DAD match those constraints exactly.

**Example:**

The following DELETE statement specifies the value of the primary key column.

```
DELETE FROM ORDER_TAB
 WHERE ORDER_KEY_key=1
```

ORDER\_KEY is the primary key in the table ORDER\_TAB, which is the top-level table as specified in the DAD. Deleting this row deletes one XML document that is generated during composition. Therefore, from the XML point of view, one XML document is deleted from the XML collection.

---

**Searching XML collections**

This section describes searching an XML collection in terms of generating XML documents using search criteria, and searching for decomposed XML data.

## Composing XML documents using search criteria

This task is the same as composition using a condition.

### Procedure:

You can specify the search criteria using the following search criteria:

- Specify the condition in the text\_node and attribute\_node of the DAD file
- Specify the *override* parameter when using the dxxGenXML() and dxxRetrieveXML() stored procedures.

For example, if you enabled an XML collection, sales\_ord, using the DAD file, order.dad, but you now want to override the price using form data derived from the Web, you can override the value of the <SQL\_stmt> DAD element, as follows:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

float price_value;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initialize host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collection,"sales_ord");
strcpy(result_tab,"xml_order_tab");
overrideType = SQL_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 20;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
override_ind = 0;
overrideType_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* get the price_value from some place, such as form data */
price_value = 1000.00 /* for example*/

/* specify the overwrite */
sprintf(overwrite,
 "SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key, quantity, price,
 tax, ship_id, date, mode
 FROM order_tab o, part_tab p,
(select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode from ship_tab) as s
 WHERE p.price > %d and s.date >'1996-06-01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key and s.part_key = p.part_key",
 price_value);

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL db2xml.dxxRetrieveXML(:collection:collection_ind,
:result_tab:rtab_ind,
:overrideType:overrideType_ind,:overwrite:overwrite_ind,
:max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
:returnCode:returnCode_ind,:returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);
```

The condition of `price > 2500.00` in `order.dad` is overridden by `price > ?`, where ? is based on the input variable `price_value`.

## Searching for decomposed XML data

You can use normal SQL query operations to search collection tables. You can join collection tables, or use subqueries, and then do a structural-text search on text columns. Apply the results of the structural search to retrieve or generate the specified XML document.

---

## Mapping schemes for XML collections

If you are using an XML collection, you must select a *mapping scheme*, which specifies how XML data is represented in a relational database. Because XML collections must match the hierarchical structure of XML documents with a relational structure for relational databases, you should understand how the two structures compare. Figure 10 shows how the hierarchical structure can be mapped to relational table columns.

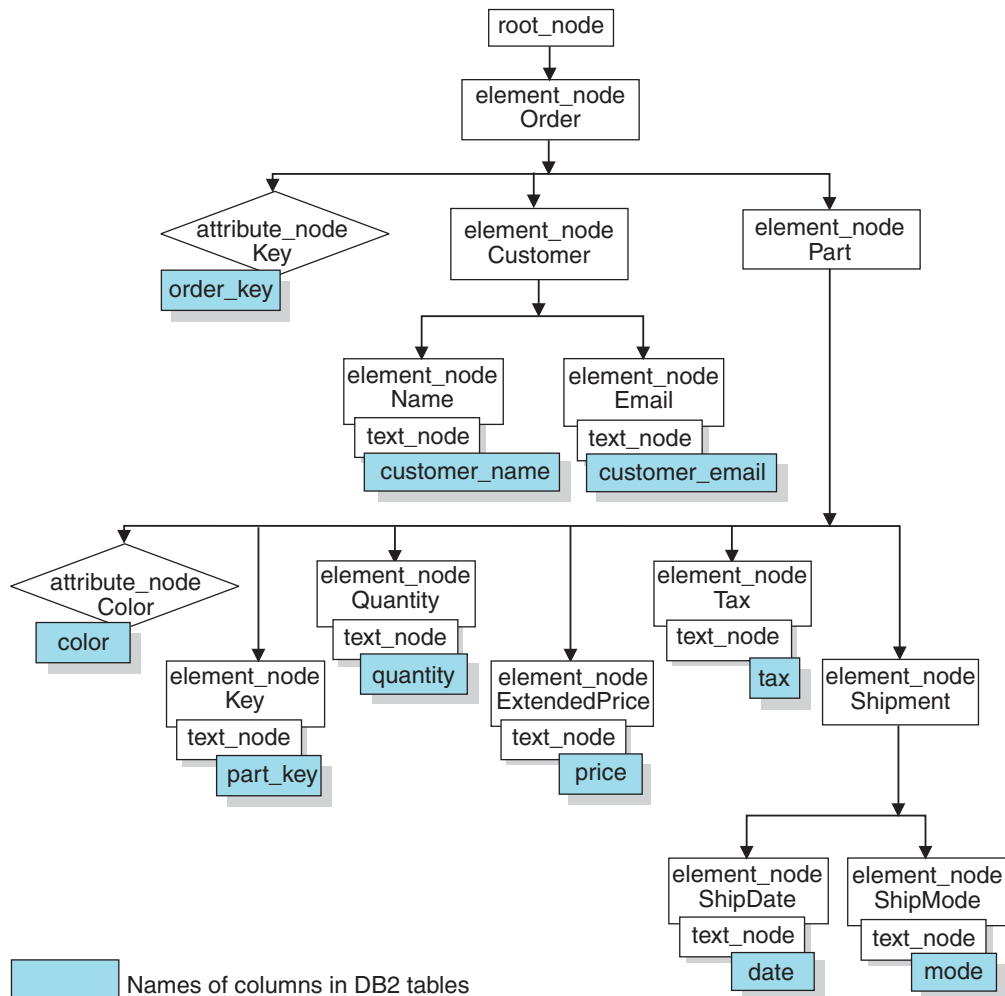


Figure 10. XML document structure mapped to relational table columns

The XML Extender uses a mapping scheme when composing or decomposing XML documents that are located in multiple relational tables. Before you create the DAD file, you must think about how your XML data is mapped to the XML collection.



## Types of mapping schemes:

Use <Xcollection> to specify the mapping scheme in the DAD file. The XML Extender provides two types of mapping schemes: *SQL mapping* and *Relational Database (RDB\_node) mapping*.

### SQL mapping

This method allows direct mapping from relational data to XML documents through a single SQL statement. SQL mapping is used for composition only. The content of the <SQL\_stmt> element must be a valid SQL statement. The <SQL\_stmt> element specifies columns in the SELECT clause that are mapped to XML elements or attributes later in the DAD. When defined for composing XML documents, the column names in the SELECT clause of the SQL statement are used to associate the value of an *attribute\_node* or a content of *text\_node* with columns that have the same *name\_attribute*. The FROM clause defines the tables containing the data; the WHERE clause specifies the *join* and search *condition*.

SQL mapping gives DB2<sup>®</sup> users the power to map the data using SQL. When using SQL mapping, you must be able to join all tables in one SELECT statement to form a query. If one SQL statement is not sufficient, consider using RDB\_node mapping. To tie all tables together, the *primary key* and *foreign key* relationship is recommended among these tables.

### RDB\_node mapping

Defines the location of the content of an XML element or the value of an XML attribute so that XML Extender can determine where to store or retrieve the XML data.

This method uses XML Extender-provided *RDB\_node*, which contains one or more node definitions for tables, optional columns, and optional conditions. The <table> and <column> elements in the DAD define how the XML data is to be stored in the database. The condition specifies the criteria for selecting XML data or the way to join the XML collection tables.

To define a mapping scheme, you must create a DAD file with an <Xcollection> element. Figure 11 on page 108 shows a fragment of a sample DAD file with SQL mapping for an XML collection, which composes a set of XML documents from data in three relational tables.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxx_install/samples/extenders/db2xml/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 <dtdid>/dxxsamples/dad/getstart.dtd</dtdid>
 <validation>YES</validation>
 <Xcollection>
 <SQL_stmt>
 SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key, quantity, price, tax, date,
 ship_id, mode, comment
 FROM order_tab o, part_tab p,
 (select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode, from ship_tab) as
 WHERE p.price > 2500.00 and s.date > '1996-06-01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key and s.part_key = p.part_key
 </SQL_stmt>
 <prolog>?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
 <doctype>!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM
 "
 /dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>
 <root_node>
 <element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="Key">
 <column name="order_key"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <text_node>
 <column name="customer"/>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 ...
 </element_node><!--end Part-->
 </element_node><!--end Order-->
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>

```

Figure 11. SQL mapping scheme

The XML Extender provides several stored procedures that manage data in an XML collection. These stored procedures support both types of mapping.

**Related concepts:**

- “Requirements for RDB\_Node mapping” on page 110
- “Requirements for using SQL mapping”
- “DAD files for XML collections” on page 171

**Related tasks:**

- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66
- “Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping” on page 63
- “Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 70

---

## Requirements for using SQL mapping

### Requirements when using SQL mapping

In this mapping scheme, you must specify the <SQL\_stmt> element inside the DAD <Xcollection> element. The <SQL\_stmt> must contain a single SQL statement that can join multiple relational tables with the query *predicate*. In addition, the following clauses are required:

- **SELECT clause**

- Ensure that the name of the column is unique. If two tables have the same column name, use the AS keyword to create an alias name for one of them.
- Group columns of the same table together and order the tables according to the tree level as they map to the hierarchical structure of your XML document. The first column in each column grouping is an object ID. In the SELECT clause, the columns of the higher-level tables must precede the columns of lower-level tables. The following example demonstrates the hierarchical relationship among tables:  

```
SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key, quantity, price, tax,
 ship_id, date, mode
```

In this example, the `order_key` and `customer` columns from the `ORDER_TAB` table have the highest relational level because they are higher on the hierarchical tree of the XML document. The `ship_id`, `date`, and `mode` columns from the `SHIP_TAB` table are at the lowest relational level.

- Use a single-column candidate key to begin each level. If such a key is not available in a table, the query should generate one for that table using a table expression and the `generate_unique()` user-defined function. In the above example, the `o.order_key` is the primary key for `ORDER_TAB`, and the `part_key` is the primary key of `PART_TAB`. They appear at the beginning of their own group of columns that are to be selected. The `ship_id` is generated as a primary key because the `SHIP_TAB` table does not have a primary key. `ship_id` is listed as the first column for the `SHIP_TAB` table group. Use the `FROM` clause to generate the primary key column, as shown in the following example.

- **FROM clause**

- Use a table expression and the `generate_unique()` user-defined function to generate a single key for tables that do not have a primary single key. For example:  

```
FROM order_tab as o, part_tab as p,
 (select
 db2xml.generate_unique() as
 ship_id, date, mode, part key from ship_tab) as s
```

In this example, a single column candidate key is generated with the `generate_unique()` function and given an alias named `ship_id`.

- Use an alias name when it is necessary to make a column distinct. For example, you could use `o` for columns in the `ORDER_TAB` table, `p` for columns in the `PART_TAB` table, and `s` for columns in the `SHIP_TAB` table.

- **WHERE clause**

- Specify a primary and foreign key relationship as the join condition that ties tables in the collection together. For example:  

```
WHERE p.price > 2500.00 AND s.date > '1996-06-01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key AND s.part_key = p.part_key
```
- Specify any other search condition in the predicate. Any valid predicate can be used.

- **ORDER BY clause**

- Define the `ORDER BY` clause at the end of the `SQL_stmt`. Ensure that there is nothing after the column names such as `ASC` or `DESC`.

- Ensure that the column names match the column names in the SELECT clause.
- List all object ID's in the same relative order as they appear in the SELECT clause.
- An identifier can be generated using a table expression and the generate\_unique() function or a user defined function.
- Maintain the top-down order of the hierarchy of the entities. The first column specified in the ORDER BY clause must be the first column listed for each entity. Keeping the order ensures that the XML documents to be generated do not contain incorrect duplicates.
- Do not qualify the columns in the ORDER BY clause with a schema or table name.

The <SQL\_stmt> element is powerful because you can specify any predicate in your WHERE clause, as long as the expression in the predicate uses the columns in the tables.

**Related reference:**

- Appendix A, "Samples," on page 241

## Requirements for RDB\_Node mapping

When using RDB\_Node as your mapping method, do not use the <SQL\_stmt> element in the <Xcollection> element of the DAD file. Instead, use the RDB\_node element as a child of the top element\_node and of each attribute\_node and text\_node.

- **RDB\_node for the top element\_node**

The top element\_node in the DAD file represents the root element of the XML document. Specify an RDB\_node for the top element\_node as follows:

- Specify all tables that are associated with the XML collection. For example, the following mapping specifies three tables in the <RDB\_node> of the <Order> element node, which is the top element node:

```
<element_node name="Order">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <table name="ship_tab"/>
 <condition>
 order_tab.order_key = part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key = ship_tab.part_key
 </condition>
 </RDB_node>
```

The condition element can be empty or missing if there is only one table in the collection.

- There are no ordering restrictions on predicates of the root node condition.
- Condition elements can reference a column name an unlimited number of times.
- If you are enabling a collection, you must specify a primary key for each table. The primary key can consist of a single column or multiple columns, called a composite key. Specify the primary key by adding an *attribute key* to the table element of the RDB\_node. When you supply a composite key, the *key* attribute will be specified by the names of key columns separated by a space. For example:

```
<table name="part_tab" key="part_key price"/>
```

The information specified for decomposition is ignored if the same DAD is used for composition.

- Use the `orderBy` attribute to recompose XML documents containing elements or attributes with multiple occurrence back to their original structure. This attribute allows you to specify the name of a column that will be the key used to preserve the order of the document. The `orderBy` attribute is part of the table element in the DAD file, and it is an optional attribute. When you decompose XML documents in an XML collection, you can lose the order of multiple-occurring elements and attribute values, unless you specify the order in the DAD file. To preserve this order, you should use the `RDB_node` mapping scheme and specify the `orderBy` attribute for the table containing the root element in its `RDB_node`.

Spell out the table name and the column name in the `<table>` tag.

- **RDB\_node for each attribute\_node and text\_node**

The XML Extender needs to know from where in the database to retrieve the data. XML Extender also needs to know where in the database to put the content from an XML document. You must specify an `RDB_node` for each attribute node and text node. You must also specify the table and column names; the condition value is optional.

1. Specify the name of the table containing the column data. The table name must be included in the `RDB_node` of the top `element_node`. In this example, for `text_node` of element `<Price>`, the table is specified as `PART_TAB`.

```
<element_node name="Price">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="price"/>
 <condition>
 price > 2500.00
 </condition>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
```

2. Specify the name of the column that contains the data for the element text. In the previous example, the column is specified as `PRICE`.
3. Specify a query condition if you want XML documents to be generated using that condition. Only the data meeting the condition is in the generated XML documents. The condition must be a valid `WHERE` clause. In the example above, the condition is specified as `price > 2500.00`, so only rows where the price is over 2500 will be included in the XML documents.
4. If you are decomposing a document, or enabling the XML collection specified by the DAD file, you must specify the column type for each attribute node and text node. By specifying the column type for each attribute node and text node, you ensure that the correct data type for each column when new tables are created during the enabling of an XML collection. Column types are specified by adding the attribute `type` to the column element. For example:

```
<column name="order_key" type="integer"/>
```

The column type specified when decomposing a document is ignored for composition.

- Maintain the top-down order of the hierarchy of the entities. Ensure that the element nodes are nested properly so that XML Extender understands the

relationship between the elements when composing or decomposing documents. For example, the following DAD file does not nest Shipment inside of Part:

```

<element_node name="Part">
 ...
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
</element_node> <!-- end of element Part -->

<element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 ...
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 ...
 </element_node>

</element_node> <!-- end of element Shipment-->

```

This DAD file produces an XML documents in which the Part and Shipment elements are siblings.

```

<Part color="black ">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-2</Tax>
</Part>

<Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
</Shipment>

```

The following code shows the shipment element nested inside the Part element in the DAD file.

```

<element_node name="Part">
 ...
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
 <element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 ...
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 ...
 </element_node>

 </element_node> <!-- end of element Shipment-->
</element_node> <!-- end of element Part -->

```

Nesting the shipment element inside the part element produces an XML file with Shipment as a child element of the Part element:

```

<Part color="black ">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-2</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
</Part>

```

With the RDB\_node mapping approach, you don't need to supply SQL statements. However, putting complex query conditions in the RDB\_node element can be more difficult.

For a subtree of the DAD with element\_nodes and attribute\_nodes that map to the same table, the following is true:

- Attribute nodes do not have to be the first children of the lowest common ancestor of the element nodes that map to the same table.
- Attribute nodes can appear anywhere in the subtree, as long as they are not involved in a join condition.

**Restrictions:** The limit for the number of tables allowed in a RDB\_node mapping DAD is 30. The number of columns allowed per table is 500. The number of times each table or column can be specified in the join predicates of the condition statement is unlimited

---

## Stylesheets for an XML collection

When composing documents, XML Extender also supports processing instructions for stylesheets, using the <stylesheet> element. The processing instructions must be inside the <Xcollection> root element, located with the <doctype> and <prolog> defined for the XML document structure. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>

<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxx_install/samples/db2xml/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<SQL_stmt>
 ...
</SQL_stmt>
<Xcollection>
 ...
<prolog>...</prolog>
<doctype>...</doctype>
<stylesheet?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="order.css"?></stylesheet>
<root_node>...</root_node>
 ...

</Xcollection>
 ...
</DAD>
```

---

## Location paths

A *location path* defines the location of an XML element or attribute within the structure of the XML document. The XML Extender uses the location path for the following purposes:

- To locate the elements and attributes to be extracted when using extraction UDFs such as dxxRetrieveXML.
- To specify the mapping between an XML element or attribute and a DB2<sup>®</sup> column when defining the indexing scheme in the DAD for XML columns
- For structural text search, using the Net Search Extender

For example, a location path of /Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate points to the ShipDate element, that is a child of the Shipment, Part, and Order elements, as shown in the following example:

```

<Order>
 <Part>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>
+...

```

Figure 12 shows an example of a location path and its relationship to the structure of the XML document.

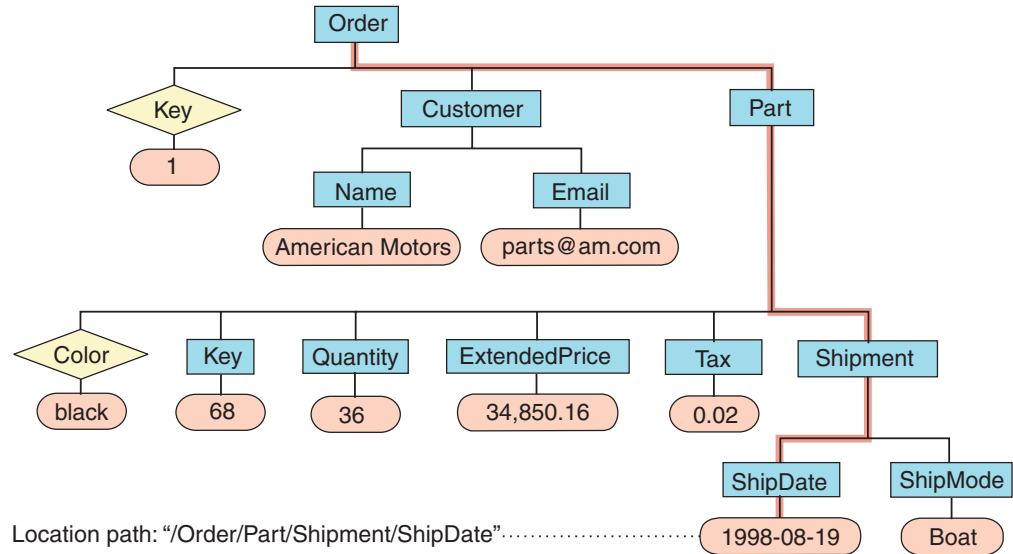


Figure 12. Storing documents as structured XML documents in a DB2 table column

The location path is used in the following situations:

**XML columns**

- Used to identify the elements and attributes to be extracted or updated when using the XML Extender user-defined functions.
- Also used to map the content of an XML element or attribute to a side table.

**XML collections**

Used to override values in the DAD file from a stored procedure.

To specify the location path, XML Extender uses a subset of the *XML Path Language (XPath)*, the language for addressing parts of an XML document.

For more information about XPath, see the following Web page:

<http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath>

**Related reference:**

- "Location path syntax"

---

## Location path syntax

XML Extender uses the location path to navigate the XML document structure. The following list describes the location path syntax that is supported by the XML Extender. A single slash (/) path indicates that the context is the whole document.



1. / Represents the XML root element. This is the element that contains all the other elements in the document.
2. /tag1 Represents the element *tag1* under the root element.
3. /tag1/tag2/.../tagn Represents an element with the name *tagn* as the child of the descending chain from root, *tag1*, *tag2*, through *tagn-1*.
4. //tagn Represents any element with the name *tagn*, where double slashes (//) denote zero or more arbitrary tags.
5. /tag1//tagn Represents any element with the name *tagn*, a descendent of an element with the name *tag1* under root, where double slashes (//) denote zero or more arbitrary tags.
6. /tag1/tag2/@attr1 Represents the attribute *attr1* of an element with the name *tag2*, which is a child of element *tag1* under root.
7. /tag1/tag2[@attr1="5"] Represents an element with the name *tag2* whose attribute *attr1* has the value 5. The *tag2* element is a child of the *tag1* element under root.
8. /tag1/tag2[@attr1="5"]/.../tagn Represents an element with the name *tagn*, which is a child of the descending chain from root, *tag1*, *tag2*, through *tagn-1*, where the attribute *attr1* of *tag2* has the value 5.

### Simple location path

*Simple location path* is a type of location path used in the XML column DAD file. A simple location path is represented as a sequence of element-type names that are connected by a single slash (/). The values of each attribute are enclosed within square brackets following the element type. Table 17 summarizes the syntax for simple location path.

Table 17. Simple location path syntax

Subject	Location path	Description
XML element	/tag1/tag2/.../tag <sub>n-1</sub> /tag <sub>n</sub>	An element content identified by the element named <i>tagn</i> and its parents
XML attribute	/tag <sub>1</sub> /tag <sub>2</sub> /.../tag <sub>n-1</sub> /tag <sub>n</sub> /@attr1	An attribute named <i>attr1</i> of the element identified by <i>tagn</i> and its parents

### Location path usage

The syntax of the location path is dependent on the context in which you are accessing the location of an element or attribute. Because the XML Extender uses one-to-one mapping between an element or attribute, and a DB2 column, it restricts the syntax rules for the DAD file and functions. Table 18 on page 116 describes in which contexts the syntax options are used.

Table 18. The XML Extender's restrictions using location path

Use of the location path	Location path supported
Value of path attribute in the XML column DAD mapping for side tables	<i>/tag1/tag2/.../tag<i>n</i></i> and <i>/tag1/tag2/@attr1</i> (simple location path described in Table 17 on page 115)
Extracting UDFs	All location paths <sup>1</sup>
Update UDF	All location paths <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The extracting and updating UDFs support location paths that have predicates with attributes, but not elements.

**Related concepts:**

- “Location paths” on page 113

---

## Enabling XML collections

Enabling an XML collection parses the DAD file to identify the tables and columns related to the XML document, and records control information in the XML\_USAGE table. Enabling an XML collection is optional for:

- Decomposing an XML document and storing the data in new DB2 database tables
- Composing an XML document from existing data in multiple DB2 database tables

If the same DAD file is used for composing and decomposing, you can enable the collection for both composition and decomposition.

You can enable an XML collection with the XML Extender Administration wizard, with the **dxxadm** command with the `enable_collection` option, or with the XML Extender stored procedure `dxxEnableCollection()`.

**Using the Administration wizard:**

To enable an XML collection using the wizard:

1. Set up and start the Administration wizard.
2. Click **Work with XML Collections** from the Launchpad window. The Select a Task window opens.
3. Click **Enable a Collection** and then **Next**. The Enable a Collection window opens.
4. Select the name of the collection that you want to enable in the **Collection name** field.
5. Specify the DAD file name in the **DAD file name** field.
6. Click **Finish** to enable the collection and return to the Launchpad window.
  - If the collection is successfully enabled, an Enabled collection is successful message is displayed.
  - If the collection is not successfully enabled, an error message is displayed. Repeat the steps above until the collection is successfully enabled.

**Enabling collections using the dxxadm command:**

To enable an XML collection, enter the **dxxadm** command from a DB2 database command line:

**Syntax:**

► `dxxadm enable_collection dbName collection DAD_file` ◄

**Parameters:**

*dbName*

The name of the RDB database.

*collection*

The name of the XML collection. This value is used as a parameter for the XML collection stored procedures.

*DAD\_file*

The name of the file that contains the document access definition (DAD).

**Example:** The following example enables a collection called `sales_ord` in the database `SALES_DB` using the command line. The DAD file uses SQL mapping.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm enable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord getstart_collection.dad
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(enable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord
'getstart_collection.dad')
```

From the Operations Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXADM('enable_collection', 'SALES_DB', 'sales_ord',
'getstart_collection.dad');
```

After you enable the XML collection, you can compose or decompose XML documents using the XML Extender stored procedures.

**Related concepts:**

- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93

**Related tasks:**

- “Disabling XML collections”
- “Managing data in XML collections” on page 94

---

## Disabling XML collections

Disabling an XML collection removes the record in the `XML_USAGE` table that identifies tables and columns as part of a collection. It does not drop any data tables. You disable a collection when you want to update the DAD and need to re-enable a collection, or when you want to drop a collection.

You can disable an XML collection with the XML Extender Administration wizard, with the `dxxadm` command with the `disable_collection` option, or with the XML Extender stored procedure `dxxDisableCollection()`.

**Procedure:**

To disable an XML collection using the Administration wizard:

1. Start the Administration wizard.

2. Click **Work with XML Collections** from the Launchpad window to view the XML Extender collection related tasks. The Select a Task window opens.
3. Click **Disable an XML Collection** and then **Next** to disable an XML collection. The Disable a Collection window opens.
4. Type the name of the collection that you want to disable in the **Collection name** field.
5. Click **Finish** to disable the collection and return to the Launchpad window.
  - If the collection is successfully disabled, Disabled collection is successful message is displayed.
  - If the collection is not successfully disabled, an error box is displayed. Repeat the steps above until the collection is successfully disabled.

To disable an XML collection from the command line, enter the **dxxadm** command.

**Syntax:**

►►—dxxadm—disable\_collection—dbName—collection—————►►

**Parameters:**

*dbName*

The name of the RDB database.

*collection*

The name of the XML collection. This value is used as a parameter for the XML collection stored procedures.

**Example:**

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm disable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(disable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord)
```

From the Operations Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXMADM('disable_collection', 'SALES_DB', 'sales_ord');
```

**Related concepts:**

- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93
- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188

**Related tasks:**

- “Managing data in XML collections” on page 94

## Default schema

XML Extender uses the CURRENT SCHEMA special register to determine the qualifier of unqualified database object references. The CURRENT SCHEMA register is used during the following actions:

- Composing or decomposing XML documents
- Enabling or disabling columns and collections

This change allows users to specify a schema to be used other than what is set in the USER special register. In the following example, the CURRENT SCHEMA register is set explicitly to MYSCHEMA using an embedded SQL statement before calling the XML Extender stored procedure dxxGenXML.

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :dbname;
EXEC SQL SET SCHEMA = MYSCHEMA;
if (sqlca.sqlcode != 0) [
/* error process */
}
EXEC SQL CALL DB2XML.DXXGENXML(:dadobj, :result_tabname,
:result_colname, :valid_colname, :overrideType,
:override:override_ind, :m, :n:n_ind, :errCode:errCode_ind,
:msgtext:msgtext_ind);
```

MYSCHEMA is the default schema for the result table (:result\_tabname) if that table name is unqualified. MYSCHEMA is also the default schema for any unqualified tables specified in the DAD (:dadobj).



---

## Chapter 5. XML schemas

The XML schema can be used in place of a DTD to define the specifications for the content of XML documents. The XML schema uses XML format or XML syntax to define the elements and attribute names of an XML document, and defines the type of content that the elements and attributes are allowed to contain.

---

### Advantages of using XML schemas instead of DTDs

DTDs are easier to code and validate than an XML schema. However, the advantages to using an XML schema are shown in the following list:

- XML schemas are valid XML documents that can be processed by tools such as the XSD Editor in DB2 Developer Workbench, XML Spy, or XML Authority.
- XML schemas are more powerful than DTDs. Everything that can be defined by the DTD can also be defined by schemas, but not vice versa.
- XML schemas support a set of data types, similar to the ones used in most common programming languages, and provide the ability to create additional types. You can constrain the document content to the appropriate type. For example, you can replicate the properties of fields found in DB2®.
- XML schemas support regular expressions to set constraints on character data, which is not possible if you use a DTD.
- XML schemas provide better support for XML namespaces, which enable you to validate documents that use multiple namespaces, and to reuse constructs from schemas already defined in different namespaces.
- XML schemas provide better support for modularity and reuse with include and import elements.
- XML schemas support inheritance for element, attribute, and data type definitions.

**Related tasks:**

- “XML schema simpleType element” on page 122

**Related reference:**

- “Examples of an XML schema” on page 123

---

### XML schema complexType element

The XML schema element `complexType` is used to define an element type that can consist of sub-elements. For example, the following tags show the projection of an address in an XML document:

```
<billTo country="US">
 <name>Dan Jones</name>
 <street>My Street</street>
 <city>My Town</city>
 <state>CA</state>
 <zip>99999</zip>
</billTo>
```

The structure of this element can be defined in the XML schema as follows:

```

1 <xsd:element name="billTo" type="USAddress"/>
2 < xsd:complexType name="USAddress">
3 <xsd:sequence>
4 < xsd:element name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
5 < xsd:element name="street" type="xsd:string"/>
6 < xsd:element name="city" type="xsd:string"/>
7 < xsd:element name="state" type="xsd:string"/>
8 < xsd:element name="zip" type="xsd:decimal"/>
9 </xsd:sequence>
10 < xsd:attribute name="country"
 type="xsd:NMTOKEN" use="fixed"
 value="US"/>
12</xsd:complexType>

```

In the above example, it is assumed that the xsd prefix has been bound to the XML schema namespace. Lines 2 through 12 define the complexType USAddress as a sequence of five elements and one attribute. The order of the elements is determined by the order in which they appear in the sequence tag.

The inner elements are from data type xsd:string or xsd:decimal. Both are predefined simple data types.

Alternatively, you can use the <all> tag or the <choice> tag instead of the <sequence> tag. With the all tag, all sub-elements must appear, but do not need to appear in any particular order. With the choice tag, exactly one of the sub-elements must appear in the XML document

You can also use a user-defined data type to define other elements.

---

## XML schema simpleType element

XML schemas provide a set of simple built-in data types. You can derive other data types from them by applying constraints.

**Example 1:** The range of base type xsd:positiveInteger is limited to 0 to 100.

```

< xsd:element name="quantity">
 < xsd:simpleType>
 < xsd:restriction base="xsd:positiveInteger">
 < xsd:maxExclusive value="100"/>
 </xsd:restriction>
 </xsd:simpleType>
</xsd:element>

```

**Example 2:** The base type xsd:string is limited by a regular expression.

```

<xsd:simpleType name="SKU">
 < xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
 < xsd:pattern value="\d{3}-[A-Z]{2}"/>
 </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>

```

**Example 3:** Shows an enumerated type based on the string built-in type.

```

<xsd:simpleType name="SchoolClass">
 < xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
 < xsd:enumeration value="WI"/>
 < xsd:enumeration value="MI"/>
 < xsd:enumeration value="II"/>
 < xsd:enumeration value="DI"/>
 < xsd:enumeration value="AI"/>
 </xsd:restriction>
</xsd:simpleType>

```



---

## Element declarations in XML schemas

To declare an element in an XML schema you must indicate the name and type as an attribute of the element element. For example:

```
<xsd:element name="street" type="xsd:string"/>
```

Additionally, you can use the attributes `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` to determine the maximum or minimum number of times that the element must appear in the XML document. The default value of `minOccurs` and `maxOccurs` is 1.

---

## Attributes in XML schemas

Attribute declarations appear at the end of an element definition. For example:

```
<xsd:complexType name="PurchaseOrderType">
< xsd:sequence>
 < xsd:element name="billTo" type="USAddress"/>
< xsd:sequence>
 < xsd:attribute name="orderDate" type="xsd:date"/>
</xsd:complexType>
```

---

## Examples of an XML schema

It is a good strategy to write XML schemas by first designing the data structure of your XML document using a UML tool. After you design the structure, you can map the structure into your schema document. The following example shows an XML schema.

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2 <xs:schema xmlns:xs='http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'>
3
4 <xs:element name="personnel">
5 <xs:complexType>
6 <xs:sequence>
7 <xs:element ref="person" minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
8 </xs:sequence>
9 </xs:complexType>
10 </xs:element>
11
12 <xs:element name="person">
13 <xs:complexType>
14 <xs:sequence>
15 <xs:element ref="name" />
16 <xs:element ref="email" minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='4' />
17 </xs:sequence>
18 <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:ID" use='required' />
19 </xs:complexType>
20 </xs:element>
21
22 <xs:element name="name">
23 <xs:complexType>
24 <xs:sequence>
25 <xs:element ref="family" />
26 <xs:element ref="given" />
27 </xs:sequence>
28 </xs:complexType>
29 </xs:element>
30
31 <xs:element name="family" type='xs:string' />
32 <xs:element name="given" type='xs:string' />
33 <xs:element name="email" type='xs:string' />
34 </xs:schema>
```

The first two lines declare that this XML schema is XML 1.0 compatible and Unicode 8 decoded, and specify use of the XML schema standard namespace, which enables access to basic XML schema data types and structures.

Lines 4 to 10 define the personnel as a complexType that consists of a sequence of 1 to n persons. The complexType is then defined in lines 12 to 20. It consists of the complexType element name and the element email. The email element is optional (minOccurs = '0'), and can appear up to four times (maxOccurs = '4'). The greater the number of occurrences of an element, the longer it will take to validate the schema. In contrast, in a DTD you can choose only 0, 1, or unlimited appearances of an element.

Lines 22 to 29 define the name type that is used for the person type. The name type consists of a sequence of a family and a given element.

Lines 31 to 33 define the single elements family, given, and e-mail, which contain type strings that have been declared.

## XML document instance using the schema

The following example is an XML document that is an instance of the *personnlr.xsd* schema.

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2 <personnel xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
3 xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation='personsnr.xsd'>
4
5 <person id="Big.Boss" >
6 <name><family>Boss</family><given>Big</given></name>
7 <email>chief@foo.com</email>
8 </person>
9
10 <person id="one.worker">
11 <name><family>Worker</family><given>One</given></name>
12 <email>one@foo.com</email>
13 </person>
14
15 <person id="two.worker">
16 <name><family>Worker</family><given>Two</given></name>
17 <email>two@foo.com</email>
18 </person>
19 </personnel>
```

## XML document instance using a DTD

This example shows how this XML schema would be realized as a DTD.

```
1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2 <!ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
3 <!ELEMENT family (#PCDATA)>
4 <!ELEMENT given (#PCDATA)>
5 <!ELEMENT name (family, given)>
6 <!ELEMENT person (name, email*)>
7
8 <!ATTLIST person
9 id ID #REQUIRED>
10 <!ELEMENT personnel (person+)>
```

Using a DTD you can set the maximum occurrence of email to only 1 or unlimited occurrences.

Using this DTD, the XML document instance would be the same as shown in the top example, except line 2 would be changed to:

```
<!DOCTYPE personnel SYSTEM "personsnr.dtd">
```

**Related concepts:**

- “Advantages of using XML schemas instead of DTDs” on page 121

**Related tasks:**

- “XML schema simpleType element” on page 122
- “Validation functions” on page 164

**Related reference:**

- “XML schema complexType element” on page 121



---

## Chapter 6. The dxxadm administration command

---

### dxxadm command overview

The XML Extender provides an administration command, **dxxadm**, for completing the following administration tasks from the Q-shell or the OS command line.

- Enabling or disabling a database for XML Extender
- Enabling or disabling an XML column
- Enabling or disabling an XML collection

**Related concepts:**

- “Administration tools for XML Extender” on page 35
- “XML Extender administration overview” on page 42

---

### Syntax of the dxxadm administration command

```
➤ dxxadm -a [enable_db|disable_db|enable_column|disable_column|enable_collection|disable_collection] parameters
```

**Parameters:**

Table 19. dxxadm parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>enable_db</i>	Enables XML Extender features for a database.
<i>disable_db</i>	Disables XML Extender features for a database.
<i>enable_column</i>	Enables an XML column so that XML documents can be stored in the column.
<i>disable_column</i>	Disables the XML-enabled column.
<i>enable_collection</i>	Enables an XML collection according to the specified DAD.
<i>disable_collection</i>	Disables an XML-enabled collection.

---

### administration command

The following **dxxadm** are available to system programmers:

- enable\_column
- enable\_collection
- enable\_db
- disable\_column
- disable\_collection
- disable\_db

## enable\_db option of the dxxadm command

### Purpose:

Enables XML Extender features for a database. When the database is enabled, the XML Extender creates the following objects:

- The XML Extender user-defined types (UDTs).
- The XML Extender user-defined functions (UDFs).
- The XML Extender DTD repository table, DTD\_REF, which stores DTDs and information about each DTD.
- The XML Extender usage table, XML\_USAGE, which stores common information for each column that is enabled for XML and for each collection.

### Syntax:

►►—dxxadm—enable\_db—db\_name—————◄◄

### Parameters:

Table 20. enable\_db parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>db_name</i>	The name of the RDB database in which the XML data resides.

### Example::

The following example enables the database SALES\_DB.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm enable_db SALES_DB
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(enable_db SALES_DB)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXMADM('enable_db', 'SALES_DB');
```

### Related reference:

- “dxxadm command overview” on page 127

## disable\_db option of the dxxadm command

### Purpose:

Disables XML Extender features for a database; this action is called “disabling a database.” When the database is disabled, it can no longer be used by the XML Extender. Disable your database before uninstalling XML Extender (using the DLTLICPGM command) from your i5/OS system. When the XML Extender disables the database, it drops the following objects:

- The XML Extender user-defined types (UDTs).
- The XML Extender user-defined functions (UDFs).
- The XML Extender DTD repository table, DTD\_REF, which stores DTDs and information about each DTD.

- The XML Extender usage table, XML\_USAGE, which stores common information for each column that is enabled for XML and for each collection.

**Important:** You must disable all XML columns before attempting to disable a database. The XML Extender cannot disable a database that contains columns or collections that are enabled for XML Extender. You must also drop all tables that have columns defined with XML Extender user-defined types, such as XMLCLOB.

**Syntax:**

►—dxxadm—disable\_db—db\_name—◄

**Parameters:**

Table 21. disable\_db parameters

Parameter	Description
db_name	The name of the RDB database in which the XML data resides

**Example::**

The following example disables the database SALES\_DB.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm disable_db SALES_DB
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(disable_db SALES_DB)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXMADM('disable_db', 'SALES_DB');
```

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188
- Chapter 12, “XML Extender administration support tables,” on page 215

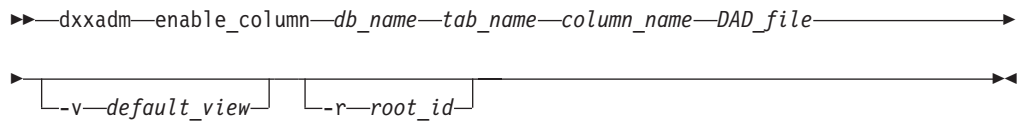
## enable\_column option of the dxxadm command

**Purpose:**

Connects to a database and enables an XML column so that it can contain the XML Extender UDTs. When enabling a column, the XML Extender completes the following tasks:

- Determines whether the XML table has a primary key; if not, the XML Extender alters the XML table and adds a column called DXXROOT\_ID.
- Creates side tables that are specified in the DAD file with a column containing a unique identifier for each row in the XML table. This column is either the root ID that the user specified or the DXXROOT\_ID that was named by the XML Extender.
- Optionally creates a default view for the XML table and its side tables, optionally using a name that you specify.

**Syntax:**



**Parameters:**

Table 22. enable\_column parameters

Parameter	Description
db_name	The name of the RDB database in which the XML data resides.
tab_name	The name of the table in which the XML column resides.
column_name	The name of the XML column.
DAD_file	The name of the DAD file that maps the XML document to the XML column and side tables.
-v default_view	The name of the default view that joins the XML column and side tables.
-r root_id	The name of the primary key in the XML column table that is to be used as the root_id for side tables. The root_id is optional.

**Example::**

The following example enables an XML column.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm enable_column SALES_DB MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB ORDER getstart.dad
-v sales_order_view -r INVOICE_NUMBER
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(enable_column SALES_DB 'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB'
ORDER 'getstart.dad' '-v' sales_order_view '-r' INVOICE_NUMBER)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXADM('enable_column', 'SALES_DB', 'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB',
'ORDER', 'getstart.dad', '-v sales_order_view', '-r INVOICE_NUMBER');
```

## disable\_column option of the dxxadm command

**Purpose:**

Connects to a database and disables the XML-enabled column. When the column is disabled, it can no longer contain XML data types. When an XML-enabled column is disabled, the following actions are performed:

- The XML column usage entry is deleted from the XML\_USAGE table.
- The USAGE\_COUNT is decremented in the DTD\_REF table.
- All triggers that are associated with this column are dropped.
- All side tables that are associated with this column are dropped.

**Important:** You must disable an XML column before dropping an XML table. If an XML table is dropped but its XML column is not disabled, the XML Extender keeps both the side tables that it created and the XML column entry in the XML\_USAGE table.



**Syntax:**

►►—dxxadm—disable\_column—db\_name—tab\_name—column\_name—◀◀

**Parameters:**

Table 23. *disable\_column* parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>db_name</i>	The name of the RDB database in which the data resides.
<i>tab_name</i>	The name of the table in which the XML column resides.
<i>column_name</i>	The name of the XML column.

**Examples:**

The following example disables an XML-enabled column.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm disable_column SALES_DB MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB ORDER
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(disable_column SALES_DB 'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB' ORDER)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXADM('disable_column', 'SALES_DB',
'MYSCHEMA.SALES_TAB', 'ORDER');
```

## enable\_collection option of the dxxadm command

**Purpose:**

Connects to a database and enables an XML collection according to the specified DAD. When running the XML Extender on a partitioned Enterprise Server Edition environment, check that all of the tables specified in your DAD file included at least one column that is qualified to be a partitioning key. When enabling a collection, the XML Extender does the following tasks:

- Creates an XML collection usage entry in the XML\_USAGE table.
- For RDB\_node mapping, creates collection tables specified in the DAD if the tables do not exist in the database.

**Syntax:**

►►—dxxadm—enable\_collection—db\_name—collection\_name—DAD\_file—◀◀

**Parameters:**

Table 24. *enable\_collection* parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>db_name</i>	The name of the RDB database in which the data resides.
<i>collection_name</i>	The name of the XML collection.

Table 24. *enable\_collection* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description
<i>DAD_file</i>	The name of the DAD file that maps the XML document to the relational tables in the collection.

**Examples:**

The following example enables an XML collection.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm enable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord
getstart_xcollection.dad
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(enable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord
'getstart_collection.dad')
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXADM('enable_collection', 'SALES_DB', 'sales_ord',
'getstart_collection.dad');
```

## disable\_collection option of the dxxadm command

**Purpose:**

Connects to a database and disables an XML-enabled collection. The collection name can no longer be used in the composition (dxxRetrieveXML) and decomposition (dxxInsertXML) stored procedures. When an XML collection is disabled, the associated collection entry is deleted from the XML\_USAGE table. Disabling the collection does not drop the collection tables that are created during when you use enable\_collection option.

**Syntax:**

►►—dxxadm—disable\_collection—*db\_name*—*collection\_name*—◄◄

**Parameters:**

Table 25. *disable\_collection* parameters

Parameter	Description
<i>db_name</i>	The name of the RDB database in which the data resides.
<i>collection_name</i>	The name of the XML collection.

**Example::**

The following example disables an XML collection.

From the Qshell:

```
dxxadm disable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord
```

From the OS command line:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXADM PARM(disable_collection SALES_DB sales_ord)
```

From the iSeries Navigator:

```
CALL MYSCHEMA.QZXADM('disable_collection', 'SALES_DB', 'sales_ord');
```



---

## Part 4. Reference

This part provides syntax information for the XML Extender administration command, user-defined data types (UDTs), user-defined functions (UDFs), and stored procedures. Message text is also provided for problem determination activities.



---

## Chapter 7. XML Extender user-defined types

The data types are used to define the column in the application table that will be used to store the XML document. You can also store XML documents as files on the file system, by specifying a file name.

All XML Extender's user-defined types have the qualifier DB2XML, which is the schema name of the DB2 XML Extender user-defined types. For example:  
db2xml.XMLVarchar

The XML Extender creates UDTs for storing and retrieving XML documents. Table 26 describes the UDTs.

Table 26. The XML Extender UDTs

User-defined type column	Source data type	Usage description
XMLVARCHAR	VARCHAR( <i>varchar_len</i> )	Stores an entire XML document as VARCHAR inside DB2. You can redefine XMLVARCHAR up to 32 KB. To change the size of an XMLVARCHAR UDT, create the UDT before you enable the database for XML Extender.
XMLCLOB	CLOB( <i>clob_len</i> )	Stores an entire XML document as a character large object (CLOB) inside DB2.
XMLFILE	VARCHAR(512)	Specifies the fully-qualified file name of the local file server. If XMLFILE is specified for the XML column, then the XML Extender stores the XML document in an external server file. You must ensure integrity between the file content, DB2, and the side table created for indexing.

Where *varchar\_len* and *clob\_len* are specific to the operating system.

For XML Extender on i5/OS™, *varchar\_len* = 3K and *clob\_len* = 10M.

To change the size of an XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB UDT, create the UDT before you enable the database for XML Extender.

Procedure:

To change the size of an XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB UDT of an enabled database:

1. Back up all data in the XML Extender-enabled database.
2. Drop all XML collection tables or XML column side tables.

3. Disable the database with the `dxxadm disable_db` command.
4. Create the XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB user-defined type.
5. Enable the database with the `dxxadm enable_db` command.
6. Re-create and reload the tables.

These UDTs are used only to specify the types of application columns; they do not apply to the side tables that the XML Extender creates.

- “Mapping schemes for XML collections” on page 106
- “Preparing to administer XML Extender” on page 36
- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93
- “XML columns as a storage and access method” on page 77



---

## Chapter 8. XML Extender user-defined functions

A user-defined function (UDF) is a function that is defined to the database management system and can be referenced in SQL statements. This section describes user-defined functions that are provided by IBM DB2 XML Extender.

---

### Types of XML Extender user-defined functions

The XML Extender provides functions for storing, retrieving, searching, and updating XML documents, and for extracting XML elements or attributes.

All the UDFs have the schema name DB2XML.

The types of XML Extender functions are described in the following list:

#### **storage functions**

Storage functions insert intact XML documents in XML-enabled columns as XML data types.

#### **retrieval functions**

Retrieval functions retrieve XML documents from XML columns in a DB2® database.

#### **extracting functions**

Extracting functions extract and convert the element content or attribute value from an XML document to the data type that is specified by the function name. The XML Extender provides a set of extracting functions for various SQL data types.

#### **update function**

The Update function modifies an entire XML document or specified element content or attribute values and returns a copy of an XML document with an updated value, which is specified by the location path.

#### **generate\_unique function**

The generate\_unique function returns a unique key.

#### **Validation functions**

Validation functions validate XML documents against either an XML schema or a DTD.

The XML user-defined functions allow you to perform searches on general SQL data types. Additionally, you can use the DB2 Net Search Extender with XML Extender to perform structural and *full text searches* on text in XML documents. This search capability can be used, for example, to improve the usability of a Web site that publishes large amounts of readable text, such as newspaper articles or *Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)* applications, which have frequently searchable elements or attributes.

Restriction: When using parameter markers in UDFs, a Java™ database (JDBC) restriction requires that the parameter marker for the UDF must be cast to the data type of the column into which the returned data will be inserted.

---

## UDT and UDF names for XML Extender

The full name of a DB2<sup>®</sup> function is *schema-name.function-name*, where *schema-name* is an identifier that provides a logical grouping for a set of SQL objects. The schema name for XML Extender UDFs and UDTs is DB2XML. In the documentation, references are made only to the function name.

You can specify UDTs and UDFs without the schema name if you add the schema name to the function path. The function path is an ordered list of schema names. DB2 database uses the order of schema names in the list to resolve references to functions and UDTs. You can specify the function path by specifying the SQL statement SET CURRENT FUNCTION PATH. This statement sets the function path in the CURRENT FUNCTION PATH special register.

---

## Storage functions

### Storage functions in XML Extender overview

Use storage functions to insert XML documents into a DB2 database. You can use the default casting functions of a UDT directly in INSERT or SELECT statements. Additionally, XML Extender provides UDFs to take XML documents from sources other than the UDT base data type and convert them to the specified UDT.

Before you use UDFs to read or write from the server file system, you must set environment variables as described in Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251.

### XMLCLOBFromFile() function

**Purpose:**

Reads an XML document from a server file and returns the document as an XMLCLOB type.

**Syntax:**

►► XMLCLOBFromFile ( *fileName* , src\_encoding )

**Parameters:**

Table 27. XMLCLOBFromFile parameter

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>fileName</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>src_encoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the source file.

**Results:**

XMLCLOB as LOCATOR

**Example:**

The following example reads an XML document from a file on a server and inserts it into an XML column as an XMLCLOB type. The encoding of the server file is explicitly specified as iso-8859-1.

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab(ID, NAME, ORDER)
VALUES('1234', 'Sriram Srinivasan',
XMLCLOBFromFile(
'/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml', 'iso-8859-1'))
```

The column ORDER in the SALES\_TAB table is defined as an XMLCLOB type.

## XMLFileFromCLOB() function

### Purpose:

Reads an XML document as CLOB locator, writes it to an external server file, and returns the file name and path as an XMLFILE type.

### Syntax:

```
►► XMLFileFromCLOB(—buffer—, —fileName—, —targetencoding—)
```

### Parameters:

Table 28. XMLFileFromCLOB() parameters

Parameters	Data type	Description
<i>buffer</i>	CLOB as LOCATOR	The buffer containing the XML document.
<i>fileName</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>targetencoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the output file.

### Results:

XMLFILE

### Example:

The following example reads an XML document as CLOB locator (a host variable with a value that represents a single LOB value in the database server), writes it to an external server file, and inserts the file name and path as an XMLFILE type in an XML column. The function will encode the output file in ibm-808.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE IS CLOB_LOCATOR xml_buff;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab(ID, NAME, ORDER)
VALUES('1234', 'Sriram Srinivasan',
XMLFileFromCLOB(:xml_buff, '/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml', 'ibm-808'))
```

The column ORDER in the SALES\_TAB table is defined as an XMLFILE type. If you have an XML document in your buffer, you can store it in a server file.

## XMLFileFromVarchar() function

### Purpose:

Reads an XML document from memory as VARCHAR, writes it to an external server file, and returns the file name and path as an XMLFILE type.

**Syntax:**

►►XMLFileFromVarchar(—buffer—, —fileName—, targetencoding)

**Parameters:**

Table 29. XMLFileFromVarchar parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>buffer</i>	VARCHAR(3K)	The buffer containing the XML document.
<i>fileName</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>targetencoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the output file.

**Results:**

XMLFILE

**Example:**

The following examples reads an XML document from memory as VARCHAR, writes it to an external server file, and inserts the file name and path as an XMLFILE type in an XML column. The function will encode the output file in iso-8859-1.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
 struct { short len; char data[3000]; } xml_buff;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab(ID, NAME, ORDER)
 VALUES('1234', 'Sriram Srinivasan',
 XMLFileFromVarchar(:xml_buff, '/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml', 'iso-8859-1'))
```

The column ORDER in the SALES\_TAB table is defined as an XMLFILE type.

## XMLVarcharFromFile() function

**Purpose:**

Reads an XML document from a server file and returns the document as an XMLVARCHAR type.

**Syntax:**

►►XMLVarcharFromFile(—fileName—, src\_encoding)

**Parameters:**

Table 30. XMLVarcharFromFile parameter

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>fileName</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>src_encoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the source file.

**Results:**

XMLVARCHAR

**Example:**

The following example reads an XML document from a server file and inserts it into an XML column as an XMLVARCHAR type. The encoding of the server file is explicitly specified as ibm-808.

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sales_tab(ID, NAME, ORDER)
VALUES('1234', 'Sriram Srinivasan',
XMLVarcharFromFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml', 'ibm-808'))
```

In this example, a record is inserted into the SALES\_TAB table. The function XMLVarcharFromFile() imports the XML document from a file that is explicitly specified to be encoded in ibm-808 into DB2 database and stores it as a XMLVARCHAR.

## Retrieval functions

### Retrieval functions in XML Extender

The XML Extender provides an overloaded function Content(), which is used for retrieval. This overloaded function refers to a set of retrieval functions that have the same name, but behave differently based on where the data is being retrieved. You can also use the default casting functions to convert an XML UDT to the base data type.

The Content() functions provide the following types of retrieval:

- **Retrieval from external storage at the server to a host variable at the client.**  
You can use Content() to retrieve an XML document to a memory buffer when it is stored as an external server file. You can use Content(): retrieve from XMLFILE to a CLOB for this purpose.
- **Retrieval from internal storage to an external server file**  
You can also use Content() to retrieve an XML document that is stored inside DB2 and store it to a server file on the DB2 database server's file system. The following Content() functions are used to store information on external server files:
  - Content(): retrieve from XMLVARCHAR to an external server file
  - Content(): retrieval from XMLCLOB to an external server file

## Content(): retrieve from XMLFILE to a CLOB

### Purpose:

Retrieves data from a server file and stores it in a CLOB LOCATOR.

### Syntax:

►► Content(—(—xmlobj—)—————►►

### Parameters:

Table 31. XMLFILE to a CLOB parameter

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLFILE	The XML document.

### Results:

CLOB (*clob\_len*) as LOCATOR

*clob\_len* for DB2 database is 2G.

### Example:

The following example retrieves data from a server file and stores it in a CLOB locator.

```
char subsystem[20];
long retcode = 0, reason = 0;
extern "OS" { int DSNALI(char * functn, ...); }

extern "OS" short DSNTIAR(struct sqlca *sqlca,
 error_struct *error_message,
 long *data_len);

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE IS CLOB_LOCATOR xml_buff;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* Attach to subsystem */
rc = DSNALI("OPEN ", subsystem, "PLANNAME",
 &retcode, &reason);
if (retcode != 0)
{
 /* print error message */
 goto exit;
}

EXEC SQL DECLARE c1 CURSOR FOR

 SELECT Content(order) from sales_tab
 WHERE sales_person = 'Sriram Srinivasan'

EXEC SQL OPEN c1;

do {
 EXEC SQL FETCH c1 INTO :xml_buff;
 if (SQLCODE != 0) {
 break;
 }
 else {
 /* do with the XML doc in buffer */
 }
}
```

```

 }

EXEC SQL CLOSE c1;

/* Detach from subsystem */
DSNALI("CLOSE", "SYNC", &retcode, &reason);
if (retcode != 0) {
 /* print error message */
}

```

The column ORDER in the SALES\_TAB table is of an XMLFILE type, so the Content() UDF retrieves data from a server file and stores it in a CLOB locator.

**Related tasks:**

- “Updating and deleting data in XML collections” on page 103

## Content(): retrieve from XMLVARCHAR to an external server file

**Purpose:**

Retrieves the XML content that is stored as an XMLVARCHAR type and stores it in an external server file.

**Syntax:**

```

Content((xmlobj, filename, targetencoding))

```

**Important:** If a file with the specified name already exists, the content function overrides its content.

**Parameters:**

Table 32. XMLVarchar to external server file parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR	The XML document.
<i>filename</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>targetencoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the output file.

**Results:**

VARCHAR(512)

**Example:**

The following example retrieves the XML content that is stored as XMLVARCHAR type and stores it in an external file located on the server. The UDF encodes the file in 'ibm-808'.

```

CREATE table app1 (id int NOT NULL, order DB2XML.XMLVarchar);
INSERT into app1 values (1, '<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE SYSTEM

```

```

"dxxsample/dtd/getstart.dtd"->
 <Order key="1">
 <Customer>
 <Name>American Motors</Name>
 <Email>parts@am.com</Email>
 </Customer>
 <Part color="black">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-02</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>AIR </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 </Part>
 </Order>');

SELECT DB2XML.Content(order,
 /dxxsamples/dad/getstart_column.dad', 'ibm-808')
FROM app1 where ID=1;

```

**Related tasks:**

- “Method for retrieving an XML document” on page 82

**Related reference:**

- “Retrieval functions in XML Extender” on page 143

## Content(): retrieval from XMLCLOB to an external server file

**Purpose:**

Retrieves the XML content that is stored as an XMLCLOB type and stores it in an external server file.

**Syntax:**

```

▶▶ Content(—xmlobj—, —filename—, —targetencoding—)

```

**Important:** If a file with the specified name already exists, the content function overrides its content.

**Parameters:**

Table 33. XMLCLOB to external server file parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLCLOB as LOCATOR	The XML document.
<i>filename</i>	VARCHAR(512)	The fully qualified server file name.
<i>targetencoding</i>	VARCHAR(100)	The encoding of the output file.



## Results:

VARCHAR(512)

## Example:

The following example retrieves the XML content that is stored as an XMLCLOB type and stores it in an external file located on the server. The UDF encodes the file in 'ibm-808'.

```
CREATE table app1 (id int NOT NULL, order DB2XML.XMLCLOB);
```

```
INSERT into app1 values (1, '<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE SYSTEM
"dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"->
 <Order key="1">
 <Customer>
 <Name>American Motors</Name>
 <Email>parts@am.com</Email>
 </Customer>
 <Part color="black">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-02</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>AIR </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 </Part>
 </Order>');

SELECT DB2XML.Content(order,
'/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml', 'ibm-808')
from app1 where ID=1;
```

---

## Extraction functions

### Extracting functions in XML Extender

The extracting functions extract the element content or attribute value from an XML document and return the requested SQL data types. The XML Extender provides a set of extracting functions for various SQL data types. The extracting functions take two input parameters. The first parameter is the XML Extender UDT, which can be one of the XML UDTs. The second parameter is the location path that specifies the XML element or attribute. Each extracting function returns the value that is specified by the location path.

Because some element or attribute values have multiple occurrence, the extracting functions return either a scalar or a table value; the former is called a scalar function, the latter is called a table function.

The examples assume you are using the DB2 database command shell, in which you do not need to type "DB2" at the beginning of each command.

## extractInteger() and extractIntegers()

### Purpose:

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as INTEGER type.

### Syntax:

#### Scalar function:

```
►► extractInteger(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀
```

#### Table function:

```
►► extractIntegers(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀
```

### Parameters:

Table 34. *extractInteger* function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

### Returned type:

INTEGER

### Return codes:

returnedInteger

### Examples:

In the following example, one value is returned when the attribute value of key = "1". The value is extracted as an INTEGER. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type "DB2" at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(key INT);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractInteger(DB2XML.XMLFile('
 /dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="black "]/key'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

### Table function example:

In the following example, each order key for the sales orders is extracted as INTEGER. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type "DB2" at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT *
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractIntegers
 (DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/key')) AS X;
```

### Related concepts:

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147

## extractSmallint() and extractSmallints()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as SMALLINT type.

**Syntax:**

**Scalar function:**

►► extractSmallint(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

**Table function:**

►► extractSmallints(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

**Parameters:**

*Table 35. extractSmallint function parameters*

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

SMALLINT

**Return codes:**

returnedSmallint

**Examples:**

In the following example, the value of key in all sales orders is extracted as SMALLINT. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(key INT);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractSmallint(db2xml.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="black "]/key'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of key in all sales orders is extracted as SMALLINT. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```

SELECT *
 FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractSmallints(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/key')) AS X;

```

**Related concepts:**

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147

## extractDouble() and extractDoubles()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as DOUBLE type.

**Syntax:**

**Scalar function:**

►► extractDouble(*—xmlobj—*, *—path—*) ◀◀

**Table function:**

►► extractDoubles(*—xmlobj—*, *—path—*) ◀◀

**Parameters:**

Table 36. extractDouble function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned Type:**

DOUBLE

**Return codes:**

returnedDouble

**Examples:**

The following example automatically converts the price in an order from a DOUBLE type to a DECIMAL. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```

CREATE TABLE t1(price DECIMAL(9,2));
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractDouble(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="black "]/ExtendedPrice'));
SELECT * from t1;

```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of `ExtendedPrice` in each part of the sales order is extracted as `DOUBLE`. The examples assume that you are using the `DB2` command shell, in which you do not need to type `DB2` at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT CAST(RETURNEDDOUBLE AS DOUBLE)
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractDoubles(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice') AS X;
```

**Related concepts:**

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147

## extractReal() and extractReals()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as `REAL` type.

**Syntax:**

**Scalar function:**

►► extractReal(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

**Table function:**

►► extractReals(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

**Parameters:**

Table 37. *extractReal* function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

REAL

**Return codes:**

returnedReal

**Examples:**

**Scalar function example:**

In the following example, the value of `ExtendedPrice` is extracted as a `REAL`. The examples assume that you are using the `DB2` command shell, in which you do not need to type “`DB2`” at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(price DECIMAL(9,2));
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractReal(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="black"]/ExtendedPrice');
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of ExtendedPrice is extracted as a REAL. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT CAST(RETURNEDREAL AS REAL)
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractReals(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice')) AS X;
```

**Related concepts:**

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147
- “XML Extender UDF return codes” on page 219

## extractChar() and extractChars()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as CHAR type.

**Syntax:**

**Scalar function:**

►►extractChar—(—xmlobj—, —path—)◄◄

**Table function:**

►►extractChars—(—xmlobj—, —path—)◄◄

**Parameters:**

Table 38. extractChar function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

CHAR

**Return codes:**

returnedChar

**Examples:****Scalar function example:**

In the following example, the value of Name is extracted as CHAR. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type "DB2" at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(name char(30));
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractChar(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Customer/Name'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of color is extracted as CHAR. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type "DB2" at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT *
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractChars(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/@color')) AS X;
```

**Related reference:**

- "Extracting functions in XML Extender" on page 147

## extractVarchar() and extractVarchars()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as VARCHAR type.

**Syntax:****Scalar function:**

►►—extractVarchar—(—xmlobj—,—path—)—————►►

**Table function:**

►►—extractVarchars—(—xmlobj—,—path—)—————►►

**Parameters:**

Table 39. extractVarchar function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

VARCHAR(4K)

**Return codes:**

returnedVarchar

**Examples:****Scalar function example:**

In a database with more than 1000 XML documents that are stored in the column ORDER in the SALES\_TAB table, you might want to find all the customers who have ordered items that have an ExtendedPrice greater than 2500.00. The following SQL statement uses the extracting UDF in the SELECT clause:

```
SELECT extractVarchar(Order, '/Order/Customer/Name') from sales_order_view
WHERE price > 2500.00
```

The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command. The UDF extractVarchar() takes the column ORDER as the input and the location path /Order/Customer/Name as the select identifier. The UDF returns the names of the customers. With the WHERE clause, the extracting function evaluates only those orders with an ExtendedPrice greater than 2500.00.

**Scalar function example:**

In the following example, the value of Name is extracted as VARCHAR. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(name varchar(30));
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractVarchar(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Customer/Name'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of color is extracted as VARCHAR. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT*
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractVarchars(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/@color')) AS X;
```

**Related concepts:**

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147
- “XML Extender UDF return codes” on page 219

## **extractCLOB() and extractCLOBs()**

**Purpose:**

Extracts a fragment of XML documents, with element and attribute markup and content of elements and attributes, including sub-elements. This function differs from the other extract functions, which return only the content of elements and attributes. The extractClob(s) functions are used to extract document fragments, whereas extractVarchar(s) and extractChar(s) are used to extract simple values.



**Syntax:****Scalar function:**

```
►► extractCLOB(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄
```

**Table function:**

```
►► extractCLOBs(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄
```

**Parameters:**

Table 40. *extractCLOB* function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

CLOB(10K)

**Return codes:**

returnedCLOB

**Examples:****Scalar function example:**

In this example, all name element content and tags are extracted from a purchase order. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(name DB2XML.xmlclob);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractClob(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Customer/Name'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In this example, all of the color attributes are extracted from a purchase order. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
SELECT *
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractCLOBs(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part/@color')) AS X;
```

**Related concepts:**

- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147

## extractDate() and extractDates()

**Purpose:**

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as DATE type. The date must be in the format: YYYY-MM-DD.

**Syntax:**

**Scalar function:**

►►extractDate(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄

**Table function:**

►►extractDates(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄

**Parameters:**

*Table 41. extractDate function parameters*

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

**Returned type:**

DATE

**Return codes:**

returnedDate

**Examples:**

**Scalar function example:**

In the following example, the value of ShipDate is extracted as DATE. The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

```
CREATE TABLE t1(shipdate DATE);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractDate(DB2XML.xmlfile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="red "]/Shipment/ShipDate');
SELECT * from t1;
```

**Table function example:**

In the following example, the value of ShipDate is extracted as DATE.

```
SELECT *
FROM TABLE(
 DB2XML.extractDates(DB2XML.XMLFile('/dxxsamples/xml/getstart.xml'),
 '/Order/Part[@color="black "]/Shipment/ShipDate')) AS X;
```

**Related concepts:**

- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147
- “XML Extender UDF return codes” on page 219

## extractTime() and extractTimes()

### Purpose:

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as TIME type.

### Syntax:

#### Scalar function:

►► extractTime(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

#### Table function:

►► extractTimes(—xmlobj—, —path—) ◀◀

### Parameters:

Table 42. extractTime function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

### Returned type:

TIME

### Return codes:

returnedTime

### Examples:

The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

#### Scalar function example:

```
CREATE TABLE t1(testtime TIME);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractTime(DB2XML.XMLCLOB(
 '<stuff><data>11.12.13</data></stuff>'), '//data'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

#### Table function example:

```
select *
from table(
 DB2XML.extractTimes(DB2XML.XMLCLOB(
 '<stuff><data>01.02.03</data><data>11.12.13</data></stuff>'),
 '//data')) as x;
```

### Related concepts:

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

### Related reference:

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147

## extractTimestamp() and extractTimestamps()

### Purpose:

Extracts the element content or attribute value from an XML document and returns the data as `TIMESTAMP` type.

### Syntax:

#### Scalar function:

```
►► extractTimestamp(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄
```

#### Table function:

```
►► extractTimestamps(—xmlobj—,—path—)◄◄
```

### Parameters:

Table 43. *extractTimestamp* function parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLFILE, or XMLCLOB	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.

### Returned type:

`TIMESTAMP`

### Return codes:

`returnedTimestamp`

### Examples:

The examples assume that you are using the DB2 command shell, in which you do not need to type “DB2” at the beginning of each command.

#### Scalar function example:

```
CREATE TABLE t1(testtimestamp TIMESTAMP);
INSERT INTO t1 values (
 DB2XML.extractTimestamp(DB2XML.XMLCLOB(
 '<stuff><data>2003-11-11-11.12.13.888888</data></stuff>'),
 '//data'));
SELECT * from t1;
```

#### Table function example:

```
select * from
table(DB2XML.extractTimestamps(DB2XML.XMLClob(
 '<stuff><data>2003-11-11-11.12.13.888888
 </data><data>2003-12-22-11.12.13.888888</data></stuff>'),
 '//data')) as x;
```

XML Extender will automatically normalize timestamps extracted from XML documents to comply with the DB2 timestamp format if needed. Timestamps are normalized to the `yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn` format or the `yyyy-mm-dd-hh mm.ss.nnnnnn` format. For example:

2003-1-11-11.12.13

will be normalized to:  
2003-01-11-11.12.13.000000

**Related concepts:**

- “UDT and UDF names for XML Extender” on page 140
- “Types of XML Extender user-defined functions” on page 139

**Related reference:**

- “Extracting functions in XML Extender” on page 147
- “XML Extender UDF return codes” on page 219

---

## Update functions in XML Extender

The Update() function updates a specified element or attribute value in one or more XML documents stored in the XML column. You can also use the default casting functions to convert an SQL base type to the XML UDT.

**Purpose**

Takes the column name of an XML UDT, a location path, and a string of the update value and returns an XML UDT that is the same as the first input parameter. With the Update() function, you can specify the element or attribute that is to be updated.

**Syntax**

►► Update(—xmlobj—, —path—, —value—) ◀◀

**Parameters**

Table 44. The UDF Update parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	XMLVARCHAR, XMLCLOB as LOCATOR	The column name.
<i>path</i>	VARCHAR	The location path of the element or attribute.
<i>value</i>	VARCHAR	The update string.

**Restriction:** The Update function does not have an option to disable output escaping; the output of an extractClob (which is a tagged fragment) cannot be inserted using this function. Use textual values only.

**Restriction:** Note that the Update UDF supports location paths that have predicates with attributes, but not elements. For example, the following predicate is supported:

```
'/Order/Part[@color="black "]/ExtendedPrice'
```

The following predicate is not supported:

```
 '/Order/Part/Shipment/[Shipdate < "11/25/00"] '
```

### Return type

Data type	Return type
XMLVARCHAR	XMLVARCHAR
XMLCLOB as LOCATOR	XMLCLOB

### Usage

When you use the Update function to change a value in one or more XML documents, it replaces the XML documents within the XML column. Based on output from the XML parser, some parts of the original document are preserved, while others are lost or changed. The following sections describe how the document is processed and provide examples of how the documents look before and after updates.

### Examples

The following example updates the purchase order handled by the salesperson Sriram Srinivasan.

```
UPDATE sales_tab
 set order = db2xml.update(order, '/Order/Customer/Name', 'IBM')
 WHERE sales_person = 'Sriram Srinivasan'
```

In this example, the content of /Order/Customer/Name is updated to IBM.

The following examples show instances of an XML document before and after an update.

Table 45. XML documents before and after an update

#### Example 1:

##### Before:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8' standalone="yes"?>
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "public.dtd" "system.dtd">
<?pitarget option1='value1' option2='value2'?>
<!-- comment -->
<book>
 <chapter id="1" date='07/01/1997'>
 <!-- first section -->
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 One.</section>
 </chapter>
 <chapter id="2" date="01/02/1997">
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 Two.</section>
 <footnote>A footnote in Chapter Two is
 here.</footnote>
 </chapter>
 <price date="12/22/1998" time="11.12.13"
 timestamp="1998-12-22-11.12.13.888888">
 38.281</price>
</book>
```

- Contains white space in the XML declaration
- Specifies a processing instruction
- Contains a comment outside of the root node
- Specifies PUBLIC ExternalID
- Contains a comment inside of root note

##### After:

Table 45. XML documents before and after an update (continued)

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8' standalone='yes'?>
<!DOCTYPE book PUBLIC "public.dtd" "system.dtd">
<?pitararget option1='value1' option2='value2'?>
<book>
 <chapter id="1" date="07/01/2003">
 <!-- first section -->
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 One.</section>
 </chapter>
 <chapter id="2" date="01/02/2003">
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 Two.</section>
 <footnote>A footnote in Chapter Two
 is here.</footnote>
 </chapter>
 <price date="12/22/2003" time="11.12.13"
 timestamp="2003-12-22-11.12.13.888888">
 60.02</price>
</book>
```

- White space inside of markup is eliminated
- Processing instruction is preserved
- Comment outside of the root node is not preserved
- PUBLIC ExternalID is preserved
- Comment inside of root node is preserved
- Changed value is the value of the <price> element

### Example 2:

#### Before:

```
<?xml version='1.0' ?>
<!DOCTYPE book>
<!-- comment -->
<book>
 ...
</book>
```

Contains DOCTYPE declaration without an ExternalID or an internal DTD subset. Not supported.

#### After:

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<book>
 ...
</book>
```

DOCTYPE declaration is not reported by the XML parser and not preserved.

### Example 3:

#### Before:

```
<?xml version='1.0' ?>
<!DOCTYPE book [<!ENTITY myDog "Spot">]>
<!-- comment -->
<book>
 <chapter id="1" date='07/01/1997'>
 <!-- first section -->
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 One about my dog &myDog;.</section>
 ...
 </chapter>
 ...
</book>
```

- Contains white space in markup
- Specifies internal DTD subset
- Specifies entity in text node

Table 45. XML documents before and after an update (continued)

**After:**

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<!DOCTYPE book>
<book>
 <chapter id="1" date="07/01/1997">
 <!-- first section -->
 <section>This is a section in Chapter
 One about my dog Spot.</section>
 ...
 </chapter>
 ...
</book>
```

- White space in markup is eliminated
- Internal DTD subset is not preserved
- Entity in text node is resolved and replaced

**Multiple occurrence:**

When a location path is provided in the Update() UDF, the content of every element or attribute with a matching path is updated with the supplied value. This means that if a document has multiple occurring location paths, the Update() function replaces the existing values with the value provided in the *value* parameter.

You can specify a predicate in the *path* parameter to provide distinct locations paths to prevent unintentional updates. The Update() UDF supports location paths that have predicates with attributes, but not elements.

## How the Update() function processes the XML document

When the Update() function replaces XML documents, it must reconstruct the document based on the XML parser output. Table 46 describes how the parts of the document are handled, with examples.

Table 46. Update function rules

Item or node type	XML document code example	Status after update
XML declaration	<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8' standalone='yes' >	The XML declaration is preserved.



Table 46. Update function rules (continued)

Item or node type	XML document code example	Status after update
DOCTYPE Declaration	<pre> &lt;!DOCTYPE books SYSTEM   "http://dtds.org/books.dtd" &gt; &lt;!DOCTYPE books PUBLIC   "local.books.dtd" "http://dtds.org/books.dtd" &gt; &lt;!DOCTYPE books&gt; -Any of &lt;!DOCTYPE books   ( S ExternalID ) ?   [ internal-dtd-subset ] &gt; -Such as &lt;!DOCTYPE books   [ &lt;!ENTITY mydog "Spot"&gt; ] &gt;?   [ internal-dtd-subset ] &gt; </pre>	<p>The document type declaration is preserved:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Root element name is supported.</li> <li>• Public and system ExternalIDs are preserved and appear when specified in the original document.</li> <li>• Internal DTD subset is <i>not</i> preserved. Entities are replaced; defaults for attributes are processed and appear in the output documents.</li> <li>• After the update, double quotation marks are used to delineate public and system URI values.</li> <li>• The current XML4C parser does not report an XML declaration that does not contain an ExternalID or internal DTD subset. After the update, the DOCTYPE declaration would be missing in this case.</li> </ul>
Processing Instructions	<pre> &lt;?xml-stylesheet   title="compact"   href="datatypes1.xsl"   type="text/xsl"?&gt; </pre>	<p>Processing instructions are preserved.</p>
Comments	<pre> &lt;!-- comment --&gt; </pre>	<p>Comments are preserved outside the root element.</p> <p>Comments inside the root element are discarded.</p>
Elements	<pre> &lt;books&gt;   content &lt;/books&gt; </pre>	<p>Elements are preserved.</p>
Attributes	<pre> id='1' date="01/02/2003" </pre>	<p>Attributes of elements are preserved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After update, double quotation marks are used to delineate values.</li> <li>• Data within attributes is lost.</li> <li>• Entities are replaced.</li> </ul>
Text Nodes	<p>This section is about my dog &amp;mydog;.</p>	<p>Text nodes (element content) are preserved.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data within text nodes is lost.</li> <li>• Entities are replaced.</li> </ul>

---

## generate\_unique() function

### Purpose:

The generate unique function returns a character string that is unique compared to any other execution of the same function. There are no arguments to this function (the empty parentheses must be specified). The result of the function is a unique value. The result cannot be null.

### Syntax:

►►—db2xml.generate\_unique()—◀◀

### Return value:

VARCHAR(13)

### Example:

The following example uses db2xml.generate\_unique() to generate a unique key for a column to be indexed.

```
<SQL_stmt>
SELECT o.order_key, customer_name, customer_email, p.part_key, color,
quantity, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode from order_tab o, part_tab p,
(select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode, part_key from ship_tab) as s
WHERE o.order_key = 1 and
 p.price > 20000 and
 p.order_key = o.order_key and
 s.part_key = p.part_key
ORDER BY order_key, part_key, ship_id
</SQL_stmt>
```

---

## Validation functions

DB2 XML Extender offers two user defined functions (UDFs) that validate XML documents against either an XML schema or a DTD. An element in an XML document is valid according to a given schema if the associated element type rules are satisfied. If all elements are valid, the whole document is valid.

The validation functions return 1 if the document is valid, or they return 0 and write an error message in the trace file if the document is invalid. The functions are:

### db2xml.svalidate:

Validates an XML document instance against the specified schema.

### db2xml.dvalidate:

Validates an XML document instance against the specified DTD.

## SVALIDATE() function

This function validates an XML document against a specified schema (or the one named in the XML document) and returns 1 if the document is valid or 0 if not. This function assumes that an XML document and a schema exist on the file system or as a CLOB in DB2.

Before you run the SVALIDATE function, ensure that XML Extender is enabled with your database by running the following command:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(enable_db mydbname)
```

If the XML document fails the validation, an error message is written to the XML Extender trace file. Enable the trace before executing the SVALIDATE command.

## Syntax

```

▶▶ SVALIDATE (--xmlobj [, --schemadoc] [--schemalocation])

```

## Parameters

Table 47. The SVALIDATE parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	VARCHAR(256)	The fully-qualified file name of the XML document to be verified.
	CLOB(2G)	XML column that contains the document to be verified.
<i>schemadoc</i>	VARCHAR(256)	The fully-qualified file name of the schema document (with no target namespace) with which to validate the XML document.
	CLOB(2G)	XML column that contains the schema (with no target namespace) with which to validate the XML document.
<i>schemalocation</i>	VARCHAR(256)	Namespace URI and fully-qualified schema document file name pairs to use for validation. You can specify one or more pairs separated by a space.

## Examples

**Example 1:** This example validates `equiplog2001.xml` against the schema that is specified within the document.

```
select db2xml.svalidate('/dxxsamples/xml/equiplog2001..xml') from db2xml.onerow
```

**Example 2:** This example validates an XML document using the specified schema, and both the document and schema are stored in DB2 database tables.

```
select db2xml.svalidate(doc,schema) from xml where id=1
```

### Example 3:

This example validates the XML document in CLOB column `xml` in `a_table` against the specified nonnamespace schema `schema1.xsd` and the specified list of namespace schemas, `schema2.xsd` and `schema3.xsd`, that are associated with target namespaces `http://ns1` and `http://ns2`:

```
select db2xml.svalidate(
 xml,
 'xsd/schema1.xsd',
 'http://ns1 /dxxsamples/schema2.xsd
 http://ns2 /dxxsamples/schema3.xsd')
from a_table where id=2
```

#### Example 4:

This example validates test.xml against the specified list of schemas, schema1.xsd and schema2.xsd, that are associated with target namespaces, http://ns1 and http://ns2.

```
select db2xml.svalidate(
 '/dxxsamples/xml/test.xml',
 'http://ns1 /dxxsamples/xsd/schema1.xsd http://ns2
 /dxxsamples/xsd/schems2.xsd')
from db2xml.onerow
```

## DVALIDATE() function

This function validates an XML document against a specified DTD (or the one named in the XML document) and returns 1 if the document is valid or 0 if not. This function assumes that an XML document and a DTD exist on the file system or as a CLOB in DB2.

Before executing the DVALIDATE function, ensure that XML Extender is enabled with your database by running the following command:

```
CALL QDBXM/QZXMADM PARM(enable_db mydbname)
```

If the XML document fails the validation, an error message is written to the XML Extender trace file. Enable the trace before executing the DVALIDATE command.

## Syntax

►► DVALIDATE ( (xmlobj [ , dtddoc ] ) )

## Parameters

Table 48. The DVALIDATE parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
xmlobj	VARCHAR(256)	Fully-qualified path of the XML document to be verified.
	CLOB(2G)	XML column that contains the document to be verified.
dtddoc	VARCHAR(256)	Fully-qualified path of the DTD document.
	CLOB(2G)	XML column that contains the DTD, which is either from the DTD_REF table or from a regular table.

## Examples

**Example 1:** This example validates equiplog2001.xml against the DTD that is specified within the document.

```
select db2xml.dvalidate('/dxxsamples/xml/equiplog2001.xml') from db2xml.onerow
```

**Example 2:** This example validates an XML document using the specified DTD, and both the document and DTD are in the file system.

```
select db2xml.dvalidate('/dxxsamples/xml/equiplog2001.xml',
'/dxxsamples/dtd/equip.dtd') from db2xml.onerow
```

**Example 3:** This example validates an XML document using the specified DTD, and both the document and DTD are stored in DB2 database tables.

```
select db2xml.dvalidate (doc,dtdid) from equiplogs, db2xml.dtd_ref \
 where dtdid='equip.dtd'
```

**Related reference:**

- “Starting the trace for XML Extender” on page 217



---

## Chapter 9. Document access definition (DAD) files

---

### Creating a DAD file for XML columns

This task is part of the larger task of defining and enabling an XML column.

To access your XML data and enable columns for XML data in an XML table, you need to define a document access definition (DAD) file. This file defines the attributes and key elements of your data that need to be searched within the column. For XML columns, the DAD file primarily specifies how documents stored within it are to be indexed. The DAD file also specifies a DTD or schema to use for validating documents that are inserted into the XML column. DAD files are stored as a CLOB data type, and their size limit is 100 KB.

#### Prerequisites:

Before you create the DAD file, you need to:

- Decide which elements or attributes you expect to use often in your search. The elements or attributes that you specify are extracted into the side tables for fast searches by the XML Extender.
- Define the location path to represent each element or attribute indexed in a side table. You must also specify the type of data that you want the element or attribute to be converted to.

#### Procedure:

To create a DAD file:

1. Create a new document in a text editor and type the following syntax:

```
<?XML version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM <"path/dtd/dad.dtd">.
```

*"path/dtd/dad.dtd "* is the path and file name of the DTD for the DAD file. A DTD is provided in *dxx\_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\dtd*

2. Insert DAD tags after the lines from step 1.

```
<DAD>
</DAD>
```

This element will contain all the other elements.

3. Specify validation for the document and the column:

- If you want to validate your entire XML document against a DTD or schema before it is inserted into the database:

- Insert the following tag to validate the document using a DTD:

```
<dtdid>dtd_name.dtd</dtdid>
```

- Insert the following tag to validate the document using a schema:

```
<schemabindings>
<nonamespacelocation location="path/schema_name.xsd"/>
</schemabindings>
```

- To validate the document insert the following tag:

```
<validation>YES</validation>
```

Otherwise, insert the following tag:

```
<validation>NO</validation>
```

4. Insert `<Xcolumn>` `</Xcolumn>` tags to specify that you are using XML columns as the access and storage method for your XML data.
5. Specify side tables. For each side table that you want to create:
  - a. Specify a `<table>``</table>` tag. For example:

```
<table name="person_names">
</table>
```

- b. Inside the table tags, insert a `<column>` tag for each column that you want the side table to contain. Each column has four attributes: name, type, path and, multi\_occurrence.

**Example:**

```
<table name="person_names">>
<column name="fname"
 type="varchar(50)"
 path="/person/firstName"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
<column name="lname"
 type="varchar(50)"
 path="/person/lastName"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
</table>
```

Where:

**name** Specifies the name of the column that is created in the side table.

**type** Indicates the SQL data type in the side table for each indexed element or attribute

**path** Specifies the location path in the XML document for each element or attribute to be indexed

**multi\_occurrence**

Indicates whether the element or attribute referred to by the path attribute can occur more than once in the XML document. The possible values for **multi\_occurrence** are **YES** or **NO**. If the value is **NO**, then multiple columns can be specified per table. If the value is **YES**, you can specify only one column in the side table.

6. Save your file with a DAD extension.

The following example shows a complete DAD file:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<dtdid>SG246130/code/person.dtd</dtdid>
<validation>YES</validation>
<Xcolumn>
 <table name="person_names">
 <column name="fname"
 type="varchar(50)"
 path="/person/firstName"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
 <column name="lname"
 type="varchar(50)"
 path="/person/lastName"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
 </table>
 <table name="person_phone_number">
 <column name="pnumber">
```



```

 type="varchar(20)"
 path="/person/phone/number"
 multi_occurrence="YES"/>
</table>
<table name="person_phone_number">
 <column name="pnumber"
 type="varchar(20)"
 path="/person/phone/number"
 multi_occurrence="YES"/>
</table>
<table name="person_phone_type">
 <column name="ptype"
 type="varchar(20)"
 path="/person/phone/type"
 multi_occurrence="YES"/>
</table>
</Xcolumn>
</DAD>

```

Now that you created a DAD file, the next step to defining and enabling an XML column is to create the table in which your XML documents will be stored.

**Related concepts:**

- “DAD files for XML collections”
- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93

---

## DAD files for XML collections

For XML collections, the DAD file maps the structure of the XML document to the DB2<sup>®</sup> tables from which you compose the document. You can also decompose documents to the DB2 tables using the DAD file.

For example, if you have an element called <Tax> in your XML document, you need to map <Tax> to a column called TAX. You use the DAD file to define the relationship between the XML data and the relational data.

You must specify the DAD file either while enabling a collection, or when you are using the DAD file in stored procedures for XML collections. The DAD is an XML-formatted document, residing at the client. If you choose to validate XML documents with a DTD, the DAD file can be associated with that DTD. When used as the input parameter of the XML Extender stored procedures, the DAD file has a data type of CLOB. This file can be up to 100 KB.

To specify the XML collection access and storage method, use the <Xcollection> tag in your DAD file.

**<Xcollection>**

Specifies that the XML data is either to be decomposed from XML documents into a collection of relational tables, or to be composed into XML documents from a collection of relational tables.

An XML collection is a set of relational tables that contains XML data. Applications can enable an XML collection of any user tables. These user tables can be tables of existing business data or tables that XML Extender recently created.

The DAD specifies mappings between elements or attributes of the XML document and columns of tables. It uses the following kinds of nodes to specify these mappings:

**root\_node**

Specifies the root element of the document.

**element\_node**

Identifies an element, which can be the root element or a child element.

**text\_node**

Represents the CDATA text of an element.

**attribute\_node**

Represents an attribute of an element.

Figure 13 shows a fragment of the mapping that is used in a DAD file. The nodes map the XML document content to table columns in a relational table.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "dxxsamples\dtd\dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 ...
<Xcollection>
<SQL_stmt>
 ...
</SQL_stmt>
<prolog>?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
<doctype>!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM
 "dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>
<root_node>
 <element_node name="Order"> --> Identifies the element <Order>
 <attribute_node name="key"> --> Identifies the attribute "key"
 <column name="order_key"/> --> Defines the name of the column,
 "order_key", to which the
 element and attribute are
 mapped
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer"> --> Identifies a child element of
 <text_node> --> Specifies the CDATA text for
 <column name="customer"> --> Defines the name of the column,
 "customer", to which the child
 element is mapped
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 ...
 </element_node>
 ...
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>

```

Figure 13. Node definitions for the XML document as mapped to the XML collection table

In this example, the first two columns have elements and attributes mapped to them.

The XML Extender also supports processing instructions for stylesheets, using the <stylesheet> element. It must be inside the root node of the DAD file, with the doctype and prolog defined for the XML document. For example:

```

<Xcollection>
 ...
<prolog>...</prolog>
<doctype>...</doctype>
<stylesheet>

```

```
?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="order.css"?
</stylesheet>
<root_node>...</root_node>
...

</Xcollection>
```

Use any text editor to create and update a DAD file.

**Related concepts:**

- “Mapping schemes for XML collections” on page 106

## SQL composition

You can compose XML documents using columns with the same name. Selected columns with the same name, even if from diverse tables, must be identified by a unique alias so that every variable in the select clause of the SQL statement is different. The following example shows how you would give unique aliases to columns that have the same names.

```
<SQL_stmt>select o.order_key as oorder_key,
 key, customer_name, customer_email,
 p.part_key, p.order_key as porder_key,
 color, qty, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode
from order_tab o,part_tab p
order by oorder_key, part_key</SQL_stmt>
```

You can also compose XML documents using columns with generated random values. If an SQL statement in a DAD file has a random value, you must give the random value function an alias to use it in the ORDER BY clause. This requirement is necessary because the value is not associated with any column in a given table. See the alias for generate\_unique at the end of the ORDER BY clause in the following example.

```
<SQL_stmt>select o.order_key, customer_name,customer_email,
 p.part_key,color,qty,price,tax,ship_id,
 date, mode
from order_tab o,part_tab p,

table (select db2xml.generate_unique()
as ship_id, date, mode,
 part_key
from ship_tab) s
where o.order_key=1 and p.price>2000 and
o.order_key=o.order_key and s.part_key
order by order_key, part_key,ship_id</SQL_stmt>
```

## RDB node composition

The following restrictions apply to RDB node composition:

- The condition associated with any non-root\_node RDB node DAD file must compare against a literal.
- The condition associated with any lower level RDB node in the DAD must compare against a literal.
- The condition associated with a root\_node describes the relationship between the tables involved in the RDB node composition. An example is a primary foreign key relationship.
- Each equality in the condition associated with a top-level RDB\_node specifies the join relationship between columns of two tables and is applied separately from the other equalities. That is, all the predicates connected by AND do not apply simultaneously for a single join condition; they simulate an outer join

when the document is composed. The parent-child relationship between each pair of tables is determined by their relative nesting in the DAD file. For example:

```
<condition>order_tab.order_key=part_tab.order_key AND
part_tab.part_key=ship_tab.part_key</condition>
```

## Composition from rows that have null values

You can use columns that have null values to compose XML documents.

The following example illustrates how you can generate an XML document from a table *MyTable* which has a row containing a null value in column *Col 1*. The DAD used in the example is *nullcol.dad*.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "c:\dxx\dtd\dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<validation>NO validation>NO>
<Xcollection>
<SQL_stmt>SELECT 1 as X, Col1 FROM MyTable order by X, Col1<\SQL_stmt>
<prolog>?xml version="1.0"?prolog>?xml version="1.0"?>
<doctype>!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "e:\t3xml\x.dtd">
<root_node>
<element_node name="MyColumn">
<element_node name="Column1" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <text_node>
 <column name="Col1"/>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
</element_node>
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>
```

MyTable

Col 1
1
3
-

Run *dxxGenXML* to produce the following document. There is no third *Column1* element because that row in the table had a null value.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "e:\t3xml\x.dtd">
<MyColumn>
 <Column1>1</Column1>
 <Column1>3</Column1>
</MyColumn>
```

---

## DTD for the DAD file

This topic describes the document type declarations (DTD) for the document access definition (DAD) file. The DAD file itself is a tree-structured XML document and requires a DTD. The DTD file name is *dad.dtd*. The following example shows the DTD for the DAD file:

```

<?xml encoding="US-ASCII"?>

<!ELEMENT DAD ((schemabinings |dtdid)?, validation, (Xcolumn | Xcollection))>
<!ELEMENT dtdid (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT schemabinings (nonamespacelocation)>
<!ELEMENT nonamespacelocation EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST nonamespacelocation location CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT validation (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Xcolumn (table+)>
<!ELEMENT table (column*)>
<!ATTLIST table name CDATA #REQUIRED
 key CDATA #IMPLIED
 orderBy CDATA #IMPLIED>
<!ELEMENT column EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST column
 name CDATA #REQUIRED
 type CDATA #IMPLIED
 path CDATA #IMPLIED
 multi_occurrence CDATA #IMPLIED>
<!ELEMENT Xcollection (SQL_stmt?, prolog, doctype?, stylesheet?, root_node)>
<!ELEMENT SQL_stmt (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prolog (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT stylesheet (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT doctype (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT root_node (element_node)>
<!ELEMENT element_node (RDB_node?,
 attribute_node*,
 text_node?,
 element_node*,
 namespace_node*,
 process_instruction_node*,
 comment_node*)>
<!ATTLIST element_node
 name CDATA #REQUIRED
 ID CDATA #IMPLIED
 multi_occurrence CDATA "NO"
 BASE_URI CDATA #IMPLIED> <!-- ignored -->
<!ELEMENT attribute_node (column | RDB_node)>
<!ATTLIST attribute_node
 name CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT text_node (column | RDB_node)>
<!ELEMENT RDB_node (table+, column?, condition?)>
<!ELEMENT condition (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT comment_node (#PCDATA)> <!-- ignored -->
<!ELEMENT namespace_node EMPTY> <!-- ignored -->
<!ATTLIST namespace_node
 name CDATA #IMPLIED
 value CDATA #IMPLIED>
<!ELEMENT process_instruction_node (#PCDATA)> <!-- ignored -->

```

The DAD file has four major elements:

- DTDID
- validation
- Xcolumn
- Xcollection

Xcolumn and Xcollection have child element and attributes that aid in the mapping of XML data to relational tables in DB2. The following list describes the major elements and their child elements and attributes. Syntax examples are taken from the previous example.

#### DTDID element

DTDs that are provided to XML Extender are stored in the DTD\_REF table. Each DTD is identified by a unique ID that is provided in the DTDID tag of

the DAD file. The DTDID points to the DTD that validates the XML documents, or guides the mapping between XML collection tables and XML documents. For XML collections, this element is required only for validating input and output XML documents. For XML columns, this element is needed only to validate input XML documents. The DTDID must be the same as the SYSTEM ID specified in the doctype of the XML documents.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT dtdid (#PCDATA)>

#### **validation element**

Indicates whether the XML document is to be validated with the DTD for the DAD. If YES is specified, then the DTDID must also be specified.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT validation(#PCDATA)>

#### **Xcolumn element**

Defines the indexing scheme for an XML column. It is composed of one or more tables.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT Xcolumn (table\*)>Xcolumn has one child element, table.

#### **table element**

Defines one or more relational tables created for indexing elements or attributes of documents stored in an XML column.

##### **Syntax:**

```
<!ELEMENT table (column+)>
<!ATTLIST table name CDATA #REQUIRED
 key CDATA #IMPLIED
 orderBy CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

The table element has one mandatory and two implied attributes:

##### **name attribute**

Specifies the name of the side table.

##### **key attribute**

The primary single key of the table.

##### **orderBy attribute**

The names of the columns that determine the sequence order of multiple-occurring element text or attribute values when generating XML documents.

The table element has one child element:

#### **column element**

Maps an attribute of a CDATA node from the input XML document to a column in the table.

##### **Syntax:**

```
<!ATTLIST column
 name CDATA #REQUIRED
 type CDATA #IMPLIED
 path CDATA #IMPLIED
 multi_occurrence CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

The column element has the following attributes:

##### **name attribute**

Specifies the name of the column. It is the alias name of the location path that identifies an element or attribute.

**type attribute**

Defines the data type of the column. It can be any SQL data type.

**path attribute**

Shows the location path of an XML element or attribute and must be the simple location path as specified in Table 3.1.a.

**multi\_occurrence attribute**

Specifies whether this element or attribute can occur more than once in an XML document. Values can be YES or NO.

**Xcollection**

Defines the mapping between XML documents and an XML collection of relational tables.

**Syntax:**

```
<!ELEMENT Xcollection(SQL_stmt?, prolog, doctype, root_node)>
```

Xcollection has the following child elements:

**SQL\_stmt**

Specifies the SQL statement that XML Extender uses to define the collection. Specifically, the statement selects XML data from the XML collection tables, and uses the data to generate the XML documents in the collection. The value of this element must be a valid SQL statement. It is only used for composition, and only a single SQL\_stmt is allowed.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT SQL\_stmt #PCDATA >

**prolog**

The text for the XML prolog. The same prolog is supplied to all documents in the entire collection. The value of prolog is fixed.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT prolog #PCDATA>

**doctype**

Defines the text for the XML document type definition.

**Syntax:**

```
<!ELEMENT doctype (#PCDATA | RDB_node)*>
```

doctype is used to specify the DOCTYPE of the resulting document. Define an explicit value. This value is supplied to all documents in the entire collection.

doctype has one child element:

**root\_node**

Defines the virtual root node. root\_node must have one required child element, element\_node, which can be used only once. The element\_node under the root\_node is actually the root\_node of the XML document.

**Syntax:** <!ELEMENT root\_node(element\_node)>

**RDB\_node**

Defines the DB2 database table where the content of an XML element or value of an XML attribute is to be stored or from where

it will be retrieved. `rdb_node` is a child element of `element_node`, `text_node`, and `attribute_node` and has the following child elements:

**table** Specifies the table in which the element or attribute content is stored.

**column** Specifies the column in which the element or attribute content is stored.

**condition** Specifies a condition for the column. Optional.

#### **element\_node**

Represents an XML element. It must be defined in the DAD specified for the collection. For the RDB\_node mapping, the root `element_node` must have an `RDB_node` to specify all tables containing XML data for itself and all of its child nodes. It can have zero or more `attribute_nodes` and child `element_nodes`, as well as zero or one `text_node`. For elements other than the root element no `RDB_node` is needed.

#### **Syntax:**

An `element_node` is defined by the following child elements:

#### **RDB\_node**

(Optional) Specifies tables, column, and conditions for XML data. The `RDB_node` for an element needs to be defined only for the RDB\_node mapping. In this case, one or more tables must be specified. The column is not needed because the element content is specified by its `text_node`. The condition is optional, depending on the DTD and query condition.

#### **child nodes**

Optional: An `element_node` can also have the following child nodes:

#### **element\_node**

Represents child elements of the current XML element.

#### **attribute\_node**

Represents attributes of the current XML element.

#### **text\_node**

Represents the CDATA text of the current XML element.

#### **attribute\_node**

Represents an XML attribute. It is the node that defines the mapping between an XML attribute and the column data in a relational table.

#### **Syntax:**

The `attribute_node` must have definitions for a name attribute, and either a `column` or a `RDB_node` child element. `attribute_node` has the following attribute:

**name** The name of the attribute.



attribute\_node has the following child elements:

**column**

Used for the SQL mapping. The column must be specified in the SELECT clause of SQL\_stmt.

**RDB\_node**

Used for the RDB\_node mapping. The node defines the mapping between this attribute and the column data in the relational table. The table and column must be specified. The condition is optional.

**text\_node**

Represents the text content of an XML element. It is the node that defines the mapping between an XML element content and the column data in a relational table.

**Syntax:** It must be defined by a column or an RDB\_node child element:

**column**

Needed for the SQL mapping. In this case, the column must be in the SELECT clause of SQL\_stmt.

**RDB\_node**

Needed for the RDB\_node mapping. The node defines the mapping between this text content and the column data in the relational table. The table and column must be specified. The condition is optional.

**Related concepts:**

- “DAD files for XML collections” on page 171

**Related tasks:**

- “Dynamically overriding values in the DAD file”

---

## Dynamically overriding values in the DAD file

**Procedure:**

For dynamic queries you can use two optional parameters to override conditions in the DAD file: *override* and *overrideType*. Based on the input from *overrideType*, the application can override the <SQL\_stmt> tag values for SQL mapping or the conditions in RDB\_nodes for RDB\_node mapping in the DAD.

These parameters have the following values and rules:

*overrideType*

This parameter is a required input parameter (IN) that flags the type of the *override* parameter. The *overrideType* parameter has the following values:

**NO\_OVERRIDE**

Specifies not to override a condition in the DAD file.

**SQL\_OVERRIDE**

Specifies to override the SQL statement in the DAD file.

**XML\_OVERRIDE**

Specifies to override a condition in the DAD file with a Location Path-based condition.

## *override*

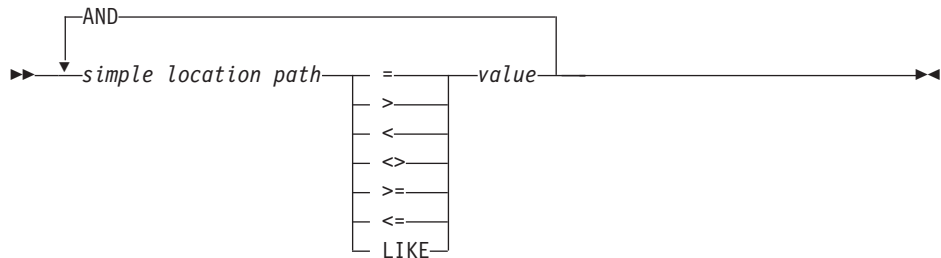
This parameter is an optional input parameter (IN) that specifies the override condition for the DAD file. The syntax of the input value corresponds to the value specified on the *overrideType* parameter:

- If you specify `NO_OVERRIDE`, the input value is a NULL string.
- If you specify `SQL_OVERRIDE`, the input value is a valid SQL statement.

To use `SQL_OVERRIDE`, you must use the SQL mapping scheme in the DAD file. The input SQL statement overrides the SQL statement specified by the `<SQL_stmt>` element in the DAD file.

- If you specify `XML_OVERRIDE`, the input value is a string that contains one or more expressions.

If you use `XML_OVERRIDE` and an expression, you must use the `RDB_node` mapping scheme in the DAD file. The input XML expression overrides the `RDB_node` condition specified in the DAD file. The expression uses the following syntax:



This syntax has the following components:

### *simple location path*

Specifies a simple location path, using syntax defined by XPath.

### **operators**

The SQL operators shown in the syntax diagram can have a space to separate the operator from the other parts of the expression.

Spaces around the operators are optional. Spaces are mandatory around the LIKE operator.

### *value*

A numeric value or a string enclosed in single quotation marks.

### **AND**

And is treated as a logical operator on the same location path. If a simple location path is specified more than once in the override string, then all the predicates for that simple location path are applied simultaneously.

If you specify `XML_OVERRIDE`, the condition for the `RDB_node` in the `text_node` or `attribute_node` that matches the simple location path is overridden by the specified expression.

`XML_OVERRIDE` is not completely XPath compliant. The simple location path is used only to identify the element or attribute that is mapped to a column.

The following examples use `SQL_OVERRIDE` and `XML_OVERRIDE` to show dynamic override.

**Example 1:** A stored procedure using SQL\_OVERRIDE. In this example, the <xcollection> element in the DAD file must have an <SQL\_stmt> element. The *override* parameter overrides the value of <SQL\_stmt>, by changing the price to be greater than 50.00, and the date to be greater than 1998-12-01.

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL*/
char override[512]; /* override */
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcol_ind;
short ovtype_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;+
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
float price_value;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initial host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collection, "sales_ord");
strcpy(result_tab, "xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_col, "xmlorder");
valid_colname[0] = '\0';

/* get the price_value from some place, such as from data */
price_value = 1000.00 /* for example */

/* specify the override */
sprintf(override,
" SELECT o.order_key, customer, p.part_key,
 quantity, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode
 FROM order_tab o, part_tab p,
 table(select db2xml.generate_unique()
 as ship_id, date, mode from ship_tab) s
 WHERE p.price > %d and s.date >'1996-06_01' AND
 p.order_key = o.order_key and s.part_key = p.part_key",
 price_value);

overrideType = SQL_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 0;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
collectionName_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_ind = 0;
ovtype_ind = 0;
```

```

maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXRETRIEVEXML" (:collectionName:collectionName_ind,
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcoll_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind, :override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind, :num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

```

**Example 2:** A stored procedure using XML\_OVERRIDE. In this example, the <collection> element in the DAD file has an RDB\_node for the root element\_node. The *override* value is XML-content based. The XML Extender converts the simple location path to the mapped DB2 database column.

```

#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL*/
char override[256]; /* override, SQL_stmt*/
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcoll_ind;
short ovtype_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initial host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collection, "sales_ord");
strcpy(result_tab, "xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_col, "xmlorder");
valid_colname[0] = '\0';
sprintf(override, "%s %s",
 "/Order/Part Price > 50.00 AND ",
 "/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate > '1998-12-01'");
overrideType = XML_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 500;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;

```

```

msg_txt[0] = '\0';
collectionName_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_ind = 0;
ovtype_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXRETRIEVEXML"
 (:collectionName:collectionName_ind,
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcol_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind,:override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,:returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

```

## Multiple Overrides

XML Extender supports multiple overrides on the same path. All overrides specified to the RDB node will be accepted.

You can specify multiple XML overrides on the same location path to refine set conditions in your search. In the following example, an XML document is composed from the two tables using the test.dad file.

*Table 49. Department Table*

Department Number	Department Name
10	Engineering
20	Operations
30	Marketing

*Table 50. Employee Table*

Employee Number	Department Number	Salary
123	10	\$98,000.00
456	10	\$87,000.00
111	20	\$65,000.00
222	20	\$71,000.00
333	20	\$66,000.00
500	30	\$55,000.00

The DAD file test.dad illustrated below contains a condition comparing the variable *deptno* with the value 10. To expand the search to greater than 10 and less than 30, you must override this condition. You must set the override parameter when calling dXXGenXML as follows:

```

/ABC.com/Department>10 AND /ABC.com/Department<30

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "C:\dxx_xml\test\dtd\dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<dtdid>E:\dtd\lineItem.dtd</dtdid>
<validation>NO</validation>
<Xcollection>
<porlog>?xml version="1.0"?</porlog>
<doctype>!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "C:\dxx_xml\test\dtd\LineItem.dtd"</doctype>
<root_node>
<element_node name="ABC.com">
<RDB_node>
<table name="dept" key="deptno"/>
<table name="empl" key="emplno"/>
<condition>dept deptno=empl.deptno</condition>
</RDB_node>

<element_node name="Department" multi_occurrence="YES">
<text_node>
<RDB_node>
<table name="dept"/>
<column name="deptno">
<condition>deptno=10</condition><RDB_node></RDB_node><text_node></text_node>
<element_node name="Employees" multi_occurrence="YES">

<text_node>

<RDB_node>

<table name="dept"><column name="deptnot"><condition>deptno=10</condition>
</table></RDB_node></text_node>
<element_node name="Employees" multi_occurrence="YES">

<element_node name="EmployeeNo">

<text_node>

<RDB_node>

<table name="empl"><column name="emplno"><condition>emplno<500</condition>
</table></RDB_node></text_node></element_node>
<element_node name="Salary">

<text_node>

<RDB_node>

<table name="empl"><column name="salary"><condition>salary>5000.00</condition>
</table></RDB_node></text_node></element_node></element_node></element_node>

```

To compose an XML document without an override, enter tests2x mydb test.dad result\_tab or you can invoke dxxGenXML without setting an override. This will generate a document similar to this:

```

<?xml version="1.0">
<!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "C:\dxx_xml\test\dtd\LineItem.dtd">
<ABC.com>
<Department>10
<Employees>
<EmployeeNo>123</EmployeeNo>
<Salary>98,000.00</Salary>
</Employees>
<Employees>
<EmployeeNo>456</EmployeeNo>

```

```
<Salary>87,000.00</Salary>
</Employees>
</Department>
</ABC.COM>
```

To override the DAD file you can invoke dxxGenXML as mentioned above, or you can run the test2x program with the specified conditions:

```
tests2x mydb test.dad result_tab -o 2 "/ABC.com/Department>10 AND
/ABC.com/Department<30"
<?xml version="1.0">
<!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "C:\dxx_xml\test\dtd\LineItem.dtd">
<ABC.com>
<Department>20
<Employees>
<EmployeeNo>111</EmployeeNo>
<Salary>65,000.00</Salary>
</Employees>
<EmployeeNo>222</EmployeeNo>
<Salary>71,000.00</Salary>
</Employees>
<Employees>
<EmployeeNo>333</EmployeeNo>
<Salary>66,000.00</Salary>
</Employees>
</Department>
</ABC.com>
```

**Related concepts:**

- “DAD files for XML collections” on page 171

**Related reference:**

- “DTD for the DAD file” on page 174





---

## Chapter 10. XML Extender stored procedures

---

### XML Extender stored procedures - Overview

The XML Extender provides stored procedures (also called *procedures*) for administration and management of XML columns and collections. These stored procedures can be called from the DB2 client. The client interface can be embedded in SQL, ODBC, or JDBC. See the section on stored procedures in the *IBM DB2 for iSeries SQL Programming* for details about how to call stored procedures.

The stored procedures use the schema DB2XML, which is the schema name of the XML Extender.

The XML Extender provides three types of stored procedures:

**Administration stored procedures**

assist users in completing administrative tasks

**Composition stored procedures**

generate XML documents using data in existing database tables

**Decomposition stored procedures**

break down or shred incoming XML documents and store data in new or existing database tables

Ensure that you include the XML Extender external header files in the program that calls stored procedures. The header files are located in the /qibm/ProdData/DB2Extenders/XML/include directory. The header files are:

**dxx.h**                The XML Extender defined constant and data types

**dxxrc.h**             The XML Extender return code

The syntax for including these header files is:

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"
```

Make sure that the path of the include files is specified in your makefile with the compilation option.

---

### Calling XML Extender stored procedures

You can use XML Extender in different operating systems from a single client application, by writing the stored procedure names in both uppercase and lowercase. To call the stored procedures in this way, use the `result_colname` and `valid_colname` versions of the composition stored procedures. Using this method gives you the following benefits:

- You can use these stored procedures in all DB2 Database environments because you can include many columns in the result table. The versions of the stored procedures that do not support `result_colname` and `valid_colname` require exactly one column in the result table.
- You can use a declared temporary table as your result table. Your temporary table is identified by a schema that is set to "session". Declared temporary tables enable you to support multi-user client environments.

Use uppercase when you call the DB2 XML Extender stored procedures to access the stored procedures consistently across platforms.

**Procedure:**

Call XML Extender using the following syntax:

```
CALL DB2XML.function_entry_point
```

Where:

*function\_entry\_point*

Specifies the name of the function.

In the CALL statement, the arguments that are passed to the stored procedure must be host variables, not constants or expressions. The host variables can have null indicators.

See samples for calling stored procedures in the DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC source file, In the DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC source directory, SQX code files are provided to call XML collection stored procedures using embedded SQL.

---

## XML Extender administration stored procedures

### XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview

These stored procedures are used for administration tasks, such as enabling or disabling an XML column or collection. They are called by the XML Extender administration wizard and the administration command **dxxadm**.

- dxxEnableDB()
- dxxDisableDB()
- dxxEnableColumn()
- dxxDisableColumn()
- dxxEnableCollection()
- dxxDisableCollection()

### dxxEnableDB() stored procedure

**Purpose:**

Enables the database. When the database is enabled, the XML Extender creates the following objects:

- The XML Extender user-defined types (UDTs).
- The XML Extender user-defined functions (UDFs).
- The XML Extender DTD repository table, DTD\_REF, which stores DTDs and information about each DTD.
- The XML Extender usage table, XML\_USAGE, which stores common information for each column and collection that is enabled for XML Extender.

**Syntax:**

```
DB2XML.dxxEnableDB(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:***Table 51. dxxEnableDB() parameters*

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188
- Chapter 12, “XML Extender administration support tables,” on page 215

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Enabling a database for XML” on page 55

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## dxxDisableDB() stored procedure

**Purpose:**

Disables the database. Disable your database before uninstalling XML Extender (with the DLTLICPGM command) from your i5/OS system. When XML Extender disables the database, it drops the following objects:

- The XML Extender user-defined types (UDTs).
- The XML Extender user-defined functions (UDFs).
- The XML Extender DTD repository table, DTD\_REF, which stores DTDs and information about each DTD.
- The XML Extender usage table, XML\_USAGE, which stores common information for each column that is enabled for XML Extender and for each collection.

**Important:** You must disable all XML columns before attempting to disable a database. The XML Extender cannot disable a database that contains columns or collections that are enabled for XML Extender.

**Syntax:**

```
DB2XML.dxxDisableDB(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:***Table 52. dxxDisableDB() parameters*

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT

Table 52. *dxxDisableDB()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188
- Chapter 12, “XML Extender administration support tables,” on page 215

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## **dxxEnableColumn()** stored procedure

**Purpose:**

Enables an XML column. When enabling a column, the XML Extender completes the following tasks:

- Determines whether the XML table has a primary key; if not, the XML Extender alters the XML table and adds a column called DXXROOT\_ID.
- Creates side tables that are specified in the DAD file with a column containing a unique identifier for each row in the XML table. This column is either the *root\_id* that is specified by the user, or it is the DXXROOT\_ID that was named by the XML Extender.
- Creates a default view for the XML table and its side tables, optionally using a name you specify.

**Syntax:**

```
DB2XML.dxxEnableColumn(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 char(tbName) tbName, /* input */
 char(colName) colName, /* input */
 CLOB(100K) DAD, /* input */
 char(defaultView) defaultView, /* input */
 char(rootID) rootID, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:**

Table 53. *dxxEnableColumn()* parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>tbName</i>	The name of the table containing the XML column.	IN
<i>colName</i>	The name of the XML column.	IN
<i>DAD</i>	A CLOB containing the DAD file.	IN
<i>defaultView</i>	The name of the default view joining the application table and side tables.	IN

Table 53. *dxxEnableColumn()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>rootID</i>	The name of the single primary key in the application table that is to be used as the root ID for the side table.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Related concepts:**

- “XML columns as a storage and access method” on page 77
- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## **dxxDisableColumn() stored procedure**

**Purpose:**

Disables the XML-enabled column.

**Syntax:**

```
DB2XML.dxxDisableColumn(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 char(tbName) tbName, /* input */
 char(colName) colName, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:**

Table 54. *dxxDisableColumn()* parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>tbName</i>	The name of the table containing the XML column.	IN
<i>colName</i>	The name of the XML column.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## dxxEnableCollection() stored procedure

### Purpose:

Enables an XML collection that is associated with an application table.

### Syntax:

```
dxxEnableCollection(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 char(colName) colName, /* input */
 CLOB(100K) DAD, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

### Parameters:

Table 55. *dxxEnableCollection()* parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>colName</i>	The name of the XML collection.	IN
<i>DAD</i>	A CLOB containing the DAD file.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

### Related concepts:

- “XML collections as a storage and access method” on page 93
- “XML Extender administration stored procedures - Overview” on page 188

### Related tasks:

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187

### Related reference:

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## dxxDisableCollection() stored procedure

### Purpose:

Disables an XML-enabled collection, removing markers that identify tables and columns as part of a collection.

### Syntax:

```
dxxDisableCollection(char(dbName) dbName, /* input */
 char(colName) colName, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:***Table 56. dxxDisableCollection() parameters*

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>dbName</i>	The database name.	IN
<i>colName</i>	The name of the XML collection.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

---

## XML Extender composition stored procedures

### XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview

The composition stored procedures `dxxGenXML()`, `dxxRetrieveXML()`, `dxxGenXMLCLOB()`, and `dxxRetrieveXMLCLOB()` are used to generate XML documents using data in existing database tables. The `dxxGenXML()` stored procedure takes a DAD file as input; it does not require an enabled XML collection. The `dxxRetrieveXML()` stored procedure takes an enabled XML collection name as input.

The following performance enhancements have been made for composition stored procedures, `dxxGenXMLClob` and `DXXRetrieveXMLClob`.

- On i5/OS™ and zSeries® operating systems, the length of the override parameter has been increased to 16 KB.
- The requirement for an intermediate result table has been removed.
- By using these stored procedures:
  - You reduce the instruction path length because there is no need to create result tables.
  - You simplify your programming.
- Use the stored procedures that require an intermediate result table if you want to produce more than one document.

### **dxxGenXML() stored procedure**

**Purpose:**

Constructs XML documents using data that is stored in the XML collection tables that are specified by the `<Xcollection>` in the DAD file and inserts each XML document as a row into the result table. You can also open a cursor on the result table and fetch the result set.

To provide flexibility, `dxxGenXML()` lets the user specify the maximum number of rows to be generated in the result table. This decreases the amount of time the application must wait for the results during any trial process. The stored procedure returns the number of actual rows in the table and any error information, including error codes and error messages.

To support dynamic query, `dxxGenXML()` takes an input parameter, *override*. Based on the input *overrideType*, the application can override the `SQL_stmt` for SQL mapping or the conditions in `RDB_node` for `RDB_node` mapping in the DAD file. The input parameter *overrideType* is used to clarify the type of the *override*.

**Syntax:**

```
dxxGenXML(CLOB(100k) DAD, /* input */
varchar(resultTabName) resultTabName, /* input */
varchar(resultColumn) result_column, /* input */
varchar(validColumn) valid_column, /* input */
integer overrideType, /* input */
varchar(varchar_value) override, /* input */
integer maxRows, /* input */
integer numRows, /*output*/
integer returnCode, /*output*/
varchar(1024) returnMsg) /*output*/
```

Where the `varchar_value` is 32672 for Windows and UNIX, and 16366 for i5/OS and z/OS.

**Parameters:**

Table 57. `dxxGenXML()` parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>DAD</i>	A CLOB containing the DAD file.	IN
<i>resultTabName</i>	The name of the result table, which should exist before the call. The table contains only one column of either XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB type.	IN
<i>result_column</i>	The name of the column in the result table in which the composed XML documents are stored.	IN
<i>valid_column</i>	The name of the column that indicates whether the XML document is valid when it is validated against a document type definition (DTD).	IN
<i>overrideType</i>	A flag to indicate the type of the following <i>override</i> parameter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>NO_OVERRIDE</b>: No override.</li> <li><b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b>: Override by an <code>SQL_stmt</code>.</li> <li><b>XML_OVERRIDE</b>: Override by a Location Path-based condition.</li> </ul>	IN



Table 57. *dxxGenXML()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>override</i>	<p>Overrides the condition in the DAD file. The input value is based on the <i>overrideType</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b>: A NULL string.</li> <li>• <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b>: A valid SQL statement. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that SQL mapping is used in the DAD file. The input SQL statement overrides the <i>SQL_stmt</i> in the DAD file.</li> <li>• <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b>: A string that contains one or more expressions that are separated by the word AND. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that <i>RDB_node</i> mapping is used in the DAD file.</li> </ul>	IN
<i>varchar_value</i>	The size of the VARCHAR.	IN
<i>maxRows</i>	The maximum number of rows in the result table.	IN
<i>numRows</i>	The actual number of generated rows in the result table.	OUT
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Examples:**

The following example fragment assumes that a result table is created with the name of XML\_ORDER\_TAB, and that the table has one column of XMLVARCHAR type. A complete, working sample is located in DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC(GENX).

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) dad; /* DAD */

char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL */
char override[2]; /* override, will set to NULL */
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short dad_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcol_ind;
short ovtype_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

```

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxx/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) { file_length = fread ((void *) &dad.data
, 1, FILE_SIZE, file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf ("Error reading dad file
 /dxx/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n",);
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}
/* initialize host variable and indicators */
strcpy(result_tab,"xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_colname, "xmlorder")
valid_colname = '\0';
override[0] = '\0';
overrideType = NO_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 500;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
dad_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_inde = -1;
ovtype_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXGENXML" (:dad:dad_ind;
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcol_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind,:override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
 return rc;

```

### Related concepts:

- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66
- “Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping” on page 63

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## **dxxRetrieveXML() stored procedure**

**Purpose:**

The stored procedure `dxxRetrieveXML()` serves as a means for retrieving decomposed XML documents. As input, `dxxRetrieveXML()` takes a name of an enabled XML collection, the name of the created result table, and the maximum number of rows to be returned. It returns a result set of the result table, the actual number of rows in the result set, an error code, and message text.

To support dynamic query, `dxxRetrieveXML()` takes an input parameter, *override*. Based on the input *overrideType*, the application can override the `SQL_stmt` for SQL mapping or the conditions in `RDB_node` for `RDB_node` mapping in the DAD file. The input parameter *overrideType* is used to clarify the type of the *override*.

The requirements of the DAD file for `dxxRetrieveXML()` are the same as the requirements for `dxxGenXML()`. The only difference is that the DAD is not an input parameter for `dxxRetrieveXML()`, but it is the name of an enabled XML collection.

**Syntax:**

```
dxxRetrieveXML(char(collectionName) collectionName, /* input */
 char(resultTabName) resultTabName, /* input */
 char(resultColumn) result_column,
 char(validColumn) valid_column,
 integer overrideType, /* input */
 varchar(varchar_value) override,
 integer maxRows, /* input */
 integer numRows, /* output */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

Where *varchar\_value* is 32672 for Windows and UNIX and 16366 for iSeries and z/OS.

**Parameters:**

Table 58. `dxxRetrieveXML()` parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>collectionName</i>	The name of an enabled XML collection.	IN
<i>resultTabName</i>	The name of the result table, which should exist before the call. The table contains only one column of either XMLVARCHAR or XMLCLOB type.	IN

Table 58. *dxxRetrieveXML()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>resultColName</i>	The name of the column in the result table in which the composed XML documents are stored.	IN
<i>resultValidCol</i>	The name of the column that indicates whether the XML document is valid when it is validated against a document type definition (DTD).	IN
<i>overrideType</i>	A flag to indicate the type of the following <i>override</i> parameter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b>: No override.</li> <li>• <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b>: Override by an SQL_stmt.</li> <li>• <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b>: Override by a Location Path-based condition.</li> </ul>	IN
<i>override</i>	Overrides the condition in the DAD file. The input value is based on the <i>overrideType</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b>: A NULL string.</li> <li>• <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b>: A valid SQL statement. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that SQL mapping is used in the DAD file. The input SQL statement overrides the SQL_stmt in the DAD file.</li> <li>• <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b>: A string that contains one or more expressions separated by the word AND. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that RDB_node mapping is used in the DAD file.</li> </ul>	IN
<i>maxRows</i>	The maximum number of rows in the result table.	IN
<i>numRows</i>	The actual number of generated rows in the result table.	OUT
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

**Examples:**

The following fragment is an example of a call to *dxxRetrieveXML()*. In this example, a result table is created with the name of XML\_ORDER\_TAB, and it has one column of XMLVARCHAR type. A complete, working sample is located in /dxxsamples/QCSRC (RTRX).

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
char result_tab[32]; /* name of the result table */
char result_colname[32]; /* name of the result column */
```

```

char valid_colname[32]; /* name of the valid column, will set to NULL*/
char override[2]; /* override, will set to NULL*/
short overrideType; /* defined in dxx.h */
short max_row; /* maximum number of rows */
short num_row; /* actual number of rows */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short rtab_ind;
short rcol_ind;
short vcol_ind;
short ovtype_ind;
short ov_ind;
short maxrow_ind;
short numrow_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* create table */
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE xml_order_tab (xmlorder XMLVarchar);

/* initial host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collection, "sales_ord");
strcpy(result_tab, "xml_order_tab");
strcpy(result_col, "xmlorder");
valid_colname[0] = '\0';
override[0] = '\0';
overrideType = NO_OVERRIDE;
max_row = 500;
num_row = 0;
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
collectionName_ind = 0;
rtab_ind = 0;
rcol_ind = 0;
vcol_ind = -1;
ov_ind = -1;
ovtype_ind = 0;
maxrow_ind = 0;
numrow_ind = -1;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "db2xml.dxxRetrieveXML"
 (:collectionName:collectionName_ind,
 :result_tab:rtab_ind,
 :result_colname:rcol_ind,
 :valid_colname:vcol_ind,
 :overrideType:ovtype_ind,:override:ov_ind,
 :max_row:maxrow_ind,:num_row:numrow_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,:returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

```

#### Related concepts:

- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193

#### Related tasks:

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66

- “Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping” on page 63

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## dxxGenXMLClob stored procedure

**Purpose:**

As input, dxxGenXMLClob takes a buffer containing the DAD. It constructs XML documents using data that is stored in the XML collection tables that are specified by the <Xcollection> in the DAD and returns the first and typically the only XML document generated into the *resultDoc* CLOB.

**Syntax:**

```
dxxGenXMLClob(CLOB(100k) DAD /*input*/
 integer overrideType, /*input*/
 varchar(varchar_value) override, /*input*/
 CLOB(1M) resultDoc, /*output*/
 integer valid, /*output*/
 integer numDocs, /*output*/
 long returnCode, /*output*/
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /*output*/
```

Where *varchar\_value* is 32672 for Windows and UNIX and 16366 for i5/OS and z/OS.

**Parameters:**

Table 59. dxxGenXMLClob parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>DAD</i>	A CLOB containing the DAD file.	IN
<i>overrideType</i>	A flag to indicate the type of <i>override</i> parameter:  <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b> No override.  <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b> Override by an SQL_stmt  <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b> Override by a Location Path-based condition.	IN

Table 59. *dxxGenXMLClob* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>override</i>	<p>Overrides the condition in the DAD file. The input value is based on the <i>overrideType</i>.</p> <p><b>NO_OVERRIDE</b> A NULL string.</p> <p><b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b> A valid SQL statement. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that SQL mapping be used in the DAD file. The input SQL statement overrides the <i>SQL_stmt</i> in the DAD file.</p> <p><b>XML_OVERRIDE</b> A string that contains one or more expressions separated by the word AND. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that <i>RDB_node</i> mapping be used in the DAD file</p>	IN
<i>resultDoc</i>	A CLOB that contains the composed XML document.	OUT
<i>valid</i>	<p>valid is set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If VALIDATION=YES then valid=1 for successful validation or valid=0 for unsuccessful validation.</li> <li>• If VALIDATION=NO then valid=NULL.</li> </ul>	OUT
<i>numDocs</i>	<p>The number of XML documents that would be generated from the input data.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Currently only the first document is returned.</p>	OUT
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

The CLOB parameter size is 1 MB. If you have CLOB files that are larger than 1 MB, XML Extender provides a command file to redefine the stored procedure parameter. Download the *crtgenxc.zip* file from the DB2 XML Extender Web site. This ZIP file contains the following programs:

#### **crtgenxc.db2**

For use on XML Extender V7.2 FixPak 5 and later for UNIX and Windows.

### **crtgenxc.iseries**

For use with XML Extender for iSeries

### **crtgenxc.zos.jcl and crtgenxc.zos.cmd**

For use with XML Extender for z/OS V7, APAR PQ58249 and later.

For i5/OS, place the file as a member into a file. (For example, put the file into DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT).

**To specify the CLOB length:** Open the file in an editor and modify the *resultDoc* parameter, shown in the following example.

```
out resultDoc clob(clob_size),
```

**Size recommendation:** The size limit of the *resultDoc* parameter depends on your system setup, but be aware that the amount specified in this parameter is the amount allocated by JDBC, regardless of the size of the document. The size should accommodate your largest XML files, but should not exceed 1.5 gigabytes.

To run the command file on i5/OS, from the command line, enter:

```
RUNSQLSTM SRCFILE(DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT) SRCMBR(CRTGENXC) NAMING(*SQL)
```

Where *DXXSAMPLES/SQLSTMT* matches the Library and File names into which you downloaded the file.

### **Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193

### **Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66
- “Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping” on page 63

### **Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## **dxxRetrieveXMLClob stored procedure**

### **Purpose:**

The *dxxRetrieveXMLClob* stored procedure enables document composition from relational data.

The requirements for using *dxxRetrieveXMLClob* are the same as the requirements for *dxxGenXMLClob*. The only difference is that the DAD is not an input parameter for *dxxRetrieveXMLClob*, but it is the name of an enabled XML collection.

### **Syntax:**

```
dxxRetrieveXMLClob(varchar(collectionName) collectionName /*input*/
 integer overrideType, /*input*/
 varchar(varchar_value) override, /*input*/
 CLOB(1M) resultDoc, /*output*/
 integer valid, /*output*/
 integer numDocs, /*output*/
 integer returnCode, /*output*/
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /*output*/
```



**Parameters:**Table 60. *dxxRetrieveXMLClob* parameters

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>collectionName</i>	The name of an enabled XML collection.	IN
<i>overrideType</i>	A flag to indicate the type of <i>override</i> parameter: <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b> No override. <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b> Override by an SQL_stmt <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b> Override by a Location Path-based condition.	IN
<i>override</i>	Overrides the condition in the DAD file. The input value is based on the <i>overrideType</i> . <b>NO_OVERRIDE</b> A NULL string. <b>SQL_OVERRIDE</b> A valid SQL statement. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that SQL mapping be used in the DAD file. The input SQL statement overrides the SQL_stmt in the DAD file. <b>XML_OVERRIDE</b> A string that contains one or more expressions separated by the word AND. Using this <i>overrideType</i> requires that RDB_node mapping be used in the DAD file	IN
<i>resultDoc</i>	A CLOB that contains the composed XML document.	IN
<i>valid</i>	valid is set as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If VALIDATION=YES then valid=1 for successful validation or valid=0 for unsuccessful validation.</li> <li>• If VALIDATION=NO then valid=NULL.</li> </ul>	OUT
<i>numDocs</i>	The number of XML documents that would be generated from the input data. NOTE: currently only the first document is returned.	OUT
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

The CLOB parameter size is 1 MB.

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender composition stored procedures - Overview” on page 193

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Composing XML collections by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 66
- “Composing XML documents by using SQL mapping” on page 63

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## XML Extender decomposition stored procedures

### XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview

The decomposition stored procedures `dxxInsertXML()` and `dxxShredXML()` are used to break down or shred incoming XML documents and to store data in new or existing database tables. The `dxxInsertXML()` stored procedure takes an enabled XML collection name as input. The `dxxShredXML()` stored procedure takes a DAD file as input; it does not require an enabled XML collection.

### `dxxShredXML()` stored procedure

**Purpose:**

Decomposes XML documents, based on a DAD file mapping, storing the content of the XML elements and attributes in specified DB2 database tables. In order for `dxxShredXML()` to work, all tables specified in the DAD file must exist, and all columns and their data types that are specified in the DAD must be consistent with the existing tables. The stored procedure requires that the columns specified in the join condition, in the DAD, correspond to primary- foreign key relationships in the existing tables. The join condition columns that are specified in the `RDB_node` of the root element\_node must exist in the tables.

The stored procedure fragment in this section is a sample for explanation purposes. A complete, working sample is located in `DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC(SHDX)`.

**Syntax:**

```
dxxShredXML(CLOB(100K) DAD, /* input */
 CLOB(1M) xmlobj, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */
```

**Parameters:**

*Table 61. `dxxShredXML()` parameters*

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>DAD</i>	A CLOB containing the DAD file.	IN
<i>xmlobj</i>	An XML document object in XMLCLOB type.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT

Table 61. *dxxShredXML()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

### Examples:

The following fragment is an example of a call to *dxxShredXML()*. A complete, working sample is located in *DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC(SHDX)*.

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) dad; /* DAD */

SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) xmlDoc; /* input xml document */

long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short dad_ind;
short xmlDoc_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &dad.data
, 1, FILE_SIZE, file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf("Error reading dad file getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}

/* Initialize the XML CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxxsamples/xml/getstart_xcollection.xml", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) &xmlDoc.data
, 1, FILE_SIZE,
 file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf("Error reading xml file getstart_xcollection.xml \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 xmlDoc.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening xml file \n");
```

```

 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 }

/* initialize host variable and indicators */
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
dad_ind = 0;
xmlDoc_ind = 0;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXSHREXML" (:dad:dad_ind;
 :xmlDoc:xmlDoc_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
 return rc;

```

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview” on page 204

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 70
- “Decomposing XML documents into DB2 database data” on page 98

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

## dxxInsertXML() stored procedure

**Purpose:**

Takes two input parameters, the name of an enabled XML collection and the XML document that are to be decomposed, and returns two output parameters, a return code and a return message.

**Syntax:**

```

dxxInsertXML(char(collectionName) collectionName, /*input*/
 CLOB(1M) xmlobj, /* input */
 long returnCode, /* output */
 varchar(1024) returnMsg) /* output */

```

**Parameters:**

*Table 62. dxxInsertXML() parameters*

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>collectionName</i>	The name of an enabled XML collection.	IN

Table 62. *dxxInsertXML()* parameters (continued)

Parameter	Description	IN/OUT parameter
<i>xmlobj</i>	An XML document object in CLOB type.	IN
<i>returnCode</i>	The return code from the stored procedure.	OUT
<i>returnMsg</i>	The message text that is returned in case of error.	OUT

### Examples:

In the following fragment example, the *dxxInsertXML()* call decomposes the input XML document *dxx\_install/xml/order1.xml* and inserts data into the SALES\_ORDER collection tables according to the mapping that is specified in the DAD file with which it was enabled with. A complete, working sample is located in *DXXSAMPLES/QCSRC(INSX)*.

```
#include "dxx.h"
#include "dxxrc.h"

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char collectionName[32]; /* name of an XML collection */
SQL TYPE is CLOB(100K) xmlDoc; /* input xml document */
long returnCode; /* return error code */
char returnMsg[1024]; /* error message text */
short collectionName_ind;
short xmlDoc_ind;
short returnCode_ind;
short returnMsg_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

FILE *file_handle;
long file_length=0;

/* initialize the DAD CLOB object. */
file_handle = fopen("/dxxsamples/dad/getstart_xcollection.dad", "r");
if (file_handle != NULL) {
 file_length = fread ((void *) , &dad.data;
1, FILE_SIZE, file_handle);
 if (file_length == 0) {
 printf("Error reading dad file getstart_xcollection.dad\n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
 } else
 dad.length = file_length;
}
else {
 printf("Error opening dad file \n");
 rc = -1;
 goto exit;
}

/* initialize host variable and indicators */
strcpy(collectionName, "sales_ord");
returnCode = 0;
msg_txt[0] = '\0';
collectionName_ind = 0;
xmlDoc_ind = 0;
returnCode_ind = -1;
returnMsg_ind = -1;
```

```

/* Call the stored procedure */
EXEC SQL CALL "DB2XML.DXXINSERTXML" (:collection_name:collection_name_ind,
 :xmlDoc:xmlDoc_ind,
 :returnCode:returnCode_ind,
 :returnMsg:returnMsg_ind);

if (SQLCODE < 0)
 EXEC SQL ROLLBACK;
else
 EXEC SQL COMMIT;

exit:
 return rc;

```

**Related concepts:**

- “XML Extender decomposition stored procedures - Overview” on page 204

**Related tasks:**

- “Calling XML Extender stored procedures” on page 187
- “Decomposing an XML collection by using RDB\_node mapping” on page 70
- “Decomposing XML documents into DB2 database data” on page 98

**Related reference:**

- Appendix C, “XML Extender limits,” on page 251

---

## Chapter 11. Extensible stylesheet language transformation (XSLT)

---

### Creating an HTML document using an XSLT stylesheet

The Extensible stylesheet language transformation (XSLT) consists of a series of markups that can be used to apply formatting rules to each of the elements inside an XML document. XSL works by applying various style rules to the contents of an XML document based on the elements that it encounters. By design, XSLT stylesheets are regular XML documents.

Originally created for page layout, XSLT is now used in a variety of ways. For example, it can be used as a general-purpose translation tool, a system for reorganizing document content, or a way to generate multiple results such as HTML, WAP, and SVG from a single source.

XSLT is a critical bridge between XML processing and more familiar languages such as HTML. XSLT allows you to perform the following actions:

- Transform an XML structure into other data types by removing or replacing the XML tags
- Change the order of the information
- Extract special information
- Sort information

#### Prerequisites:

Before you transform an XML document to HTML, complete the following tasks:

1. Insert an XML document in the doc column of the result\_tab table.
2. Create a stylesheet.

You can create your HTML file by using the XSLTransformToFile or the XSLTransformToClob UDFs. The first returns the HTML document in a file while the second returns it as a CLOB

#### Procedure:

To create your HTML document as a file, use the following syntax:

```
SELECT XSLTransformToFile(CAST(doc AS CLOB(4k)),
 'dxx_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\xslt\getstart.xml',
 0, 'html\getstart.html')
FROM RESULT_TAB
```

where *dxx\_install* is the directory where you installed DB2 XML Extender.

#### Related reference:

- “XSLTransformToFile() user-defined function” on page 211
- “XSLTransformToClob() user-defined function” on page 210
- “Stylesheet sample: getstart.xml” on page 242

## XSLTransformToClob() user-defined function

### Purpose:

XSLTransformToClob() reads an XML document as CLOB locator and a stylesheet as CLOB or from a file, and returns the document as CLOB.

### Syntax:

```
►► XSLTransformToClob(—xmlobj—, —stylesheet—, —param—, —validate—) ◀◀
```

### Parameters:

Parameter	Data type	Description
xmlobj	CLOB	The XML document
stylesheet	CLOB,	The style sheet
	VARCHAR	The location and name of the stylesheet input file
param	CLOB	The XSLT parameter document.
	VARCHAR	The location and name of the XSLT parameter file.
validate	INTEGER	Enable (1) or disable (0) validation of the xmlobj

### Results:

The XSLTransformToClob() returns a data of CLOB type if successful.

### Examples:

The following example creates a table, `xslt_tab`, where the contents of the files `getstart.xml` (the XML document), `getstart.xsl` (the stylesheet), and `xslt_param.xml` (the XSLT parameter document) are inserted.

```
CREATE TABLE xslt_tab(xmlobj CLOB(4k), stylesheet CLOB(4k), parameters CLOB(4k))
INSERT INTO xslt_tab(xmlobj, stylesheet, parameters)
VALUES(DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(
 dxx_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\xml\getstart.xml),
 DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(dxx_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\xslt\getstart.xsl),
 DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(xslt_param.xml))
```

Create a file named `xslt_param.xml` containing the following lines:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<params xmlns="http://www.ibm.com.XSLtransformParameters">
<param name="noShipments" value="true"/>
<param name="headline">The customers...</param>
</params>
.
.
.
```

**Example 1:** The following example transforms an XML document into a HTML document using the stylesheet that has been stored in the table `xslt_tab`:

```
SELECT XSLTransformToClob(xmlobj, stylesheet, 0)
FROM xslt_tab
```



**Example 2:** This example transforms an XML document into an HTML document using a stylesheet file

```
SELECT XSLTransformToClob(xmlobj,
 /dxxsamples/xslt/getstart.xsl', 1)
FROM xslt_tab
```

**Example 3:** In this example the output is changed by additional parameters stored in the table xslt\_tab. The XSLT parameter document defines the namespace. The parameters must be wrapped in the `<param>` element. The corresponding value also can be specified in a `value` attribute, or in the content of the `<param>` element.

```
SELECT XSLTransformToClob(
 xmlobj,
 'dxxsamples\xslt\getstart.xsl',
 parameters,
 1,
 'dxxsamples\html\getstart.html')
FROM xslt_tab
```

---

## XSLTransformToFile() user-defined function

### Purpose:

Transforms the incoming XML document with the stylesheet and the XSLT parameter document. The transformed XML document is written into a file. When a directory and a suffix are passed as parameters, this UDF creates a file with the specified suffix in the specified directory.

### Syntax:

```
►► XSLTransformToFile(—xmlobj—,—stylesheet—, —param—, —validate—,—
 —filename—, —dir—,—suffix—)
```

### Parameters:

Table 63. XSLTransformToFile() parameter descriptions

Parameter	Data type	Description
<i>xmlobj</i>	CLOB	The XML document
<i>stylesheet</i>	CLOB	The style sheet
	VARCHAR	The location and name of the stylesheet input file
<i>param</i>	CLOB	The XSLT parameter document
	VARCHAR	The location and name of the XSLT parameter file
<i>validate</i>	INTEGER	Enable (1) or disable (0) validation of the xmlobj
<i>filename</i>	VARCHAR	The name of the output file
<i>dir</i>	VARCHAR	The directory of the output file
<i>suffix</i>	VARCHAR	The suffix of the output file

**Results:**

The XSLTransformToFile() returns a VARCHAR for the written file name.

**Examples:**

The following example creates a table, xslt\_tab, where the contents of the files getstart.xml (the XML document), getstart.xsl (the stylesheet), and xslt\_param.xml (the XSLT parameter document) are inserted.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>

<params xmlns="http://www.ibm.com.XSLtransformParameters">
<param name="noShipments" value="true"/>
<param name="headline">The customers...</param>
</params>

CREATE TABLE xslt_tab(xmlobj CLOB(4k), stylesheet CLOB(4k), parameters CLOB(4k))
INSERT INTO xslt_tab(xmlobj, stylesheet, parameters)
VALUES
 (DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(dx_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\xml\getstart.xml),
 DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(dx_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\xslt\getstart.xsl),
 DB2XML.XMLCLOBFromFile(xslt_param.xml))
```

Create a file named xslt\_param.xml containing the following lines:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<params xmlns="http://www.ibm.com.XSLtransformParameters">
<param name="noShipments" value="true"/>
<param name="headline">The customers...</param>
</params>
.
.
.
```

**Example 1:** This example transforms the XML document into an HTML document and writes the created document to the specified file:

```
SELECT XSLTransformToFile(xmlobj, stylesheet, 0
'/dxxsamples/html/getstart.html')
FROM xslt_tab
```

**Example 2:** This example writes an HTML document to a file using a stylesheet file. Validation is enabled but the result is the same. This feature is necessary to include default values from an XML schema in the transformation process.

```
SELECT XSLTransformToFile(xmlobj,
'/dxxsamples/xslt/getstart.xsl', 1
'/dxxsamples/html/getstart.html')
FROM xslt_tab
```

**Example 3:** In this example the output is changed by additional parameters stored in the table xslt\_tab. The XSLT parameter document defines the namespace. The parameters must be wrapped in the <param> element. The corresponding value also can be specified in a value attribute, or in the content of the <param> element.

```
SELECT XSLTransformToFile(
xmlobj,
'dxxsamples\xslt\getstart.xsl',
parameters,
1,
'dxxsamples\html\getstart.html')
FROM xslt_tab
```

**Example 4:** This example writes the transformed document into a file with an .html suffix into the dx\_install\samples\extenders\db2xml\html directory using

the stylesheet in the stylesheet column. The transformed document file name is stored in an additional column in the table.

```
UPDATE TABLE xslt_tab ADD COLUMN filename VARCHAR(512)
UPDATE TABLE xslt_tab SET filename =
 XSLTransformToFile(xmlobj,stylesheet, parameters, 1,
 '/dxxsamples/html', 'html')
FROM xslt_tab
```



---

## Chapter 12. XML Extender administration support tables

When a database is enabled, a DTD repository table (DTD\_REF) and an XML\_USAGE table are created. The DTD\_REF table contains information about all of the DTDs. The XML\_USAGE table stores common information for each XML-enabled column. Each is created with specific PUBLIC privileges.

---

### DTD reference table

The XML Extender also serves as an XML DTD repository. When a database is XML-enabled, a DTD repository table, DTD\_REF, is created. Each row of this table represents a DTD with additional metadata information. You can access this table, and insert your own DTDs. The DTDs in the DTD\_REF table are used to validate XML documents and to help applications to define a DAD file. It has the schema name of DB2XML. A DTD\_REF table can have the columns shown in Table 64.

Table 64. DTD\_REF table

Column name	Data type	Description
DTDID	VARCHAR(128)	The primary key (unique and not NULL). It is used to identify the DTD. When the DTD is specified in the DAD file, the DAD file must adhere to the schema that is defined by the DTD.
CONTENT	XMLCLOB	The content of the DTD.
USAGE_COUNT	INTEGER	The number of XML columns and XML collections in the database that use the DTD to define their DAD files.
AUTHOR	VARCHAR(128)	The author of the DTD. This information is optional.
CREATOR	VARCHAR(128)	The user ID that does the first insertion. This column is optional.
UPDATOR	VARCHAR(128)	The user ID that does the last update. This column is optional.

A DTD can be modified by the application only when the USAGE\_COUNT is zero.

#### Privileges granted to PUBLIC

Privileges of INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and SELECT are granted for PUBLIC.

---

### XML usage table (XML\_USAGE)

The XML\_USAGE table stores common information for each XML-enabled column. The XML\_USAGE table's schema name is DB2XML, and its primary key is (*table\_name*, *col\_name*). Only read privileges of this table are granted to PUBLIC. An XML\_USAGE table is created at the time the database is enabled. The columns in the XML\_USAGE table are shown in Table 65 on page 216.

Table 65. XML\_USAGE table

Column name	Description
table_schema	For an XML column, the schema name of the user table that contains an XML column. For an XML collection, a value of DXX_COLL as the default schema name.
table_name	For an XML column, the name of the user table that contains an XML column. For an XML collection, a value DXX_COLLECTION, which identifies the entity as a collection.
col_name	The name of the XML column or XML collection. It is part of the composite key along with the table_name.
DTDID	A string associating a DTD inserted into DTD_REF with a DTD specified in a DAD file; this value must match the value of the DTDID element in the DAD. This column is a foreign key.
DAD	The content of the DAD file that is associated with the XML column or XML collection.
access_mode	Specifies which access mode is used: 1 for XML collection, 0 for XML column
default_view	Stores the default view name if there is one.
trigger_suffix	Not NULL. For unique trigger names.
validation	Has a value of 1 to validate, and 0 to skip validation.
version	The trigger version of the XML column.
root_id	The root ID of the XML column.
side_tab_qual	The side table qualifier.

Do not add, modify, or delete entries from the XML\_USAGE table; it is for XML Extender internal use only.

#### Privileges granted to PUBLIC

For XML\_USAGE, the privilege of SELECT is granted for PUBLIC. INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE are granted to DB2XML.

---

## Chapter 13. Troubleshooting

---

### Troubleshooting XML Extender

All embedded SQL statements in your program and DB2 database command line interface (CLI) calls in your program, including those that invoke the DB2 database XML Extender user-defined functions (UDFs), generate codes that indicate whether the embedded SQL statement or DB2 database CLI call ran successfully.

Your program can retrieve information that supplements these codes including SQLSTATE information and error messages. You can use this diagnostic information to isolate and fix problems in your program.

Occasionally the source of a problem cannot be easily diagnosed. In these cases, you might need to provide information to IBM Software Support to isolate and fix the problem. The XML Extender includes a trace facility that records XML Extender activity. The trace information can be valuable input to IBM Software Support. You should use the trace facility only under instruction from IBM Software Support.

This section describes the trace facility, and error codes and messages.

**Related reference:**

- “SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers for XML Extender” on page 219
- “Starting the trace for XML Extender”
- “Stopping the trace” on page 218
- “XML Extender messages” on page 224

---

### Starting the trace for XML Extender

**Purpose:**

Records the XML Extender server activity. To start the trace, apply the `on` option to `dxstrc`, along with the user profile and the name of an existing directory to contain the trace file. When the trace is turned on, the file, `dxxINSTANCE.trc`, is placed in the specified directory. `INSTANCE` is the numeric UID value assigned to the User Profile for which the trace was started. The trace file is not limited in size.

**Syntax:**

**Starting the trace from the Qshell:**

```
►—dxstrc—on—user_profile—trace_directory—►
```

**Starting the trace from the iSeries Navigator:**

```
call schema.QZXMTRC('on', 'user_profile', 'trace_directory');
```

**Starting the trace from the OS command line:**

```
call QDBXM/QZXMTRC PARM(on user_profile 'trace_directory')
```

**Parameters:***Table 66. Trace parameters*

Parameter	Description
<i>user_profile</i>	The name of the user profile associated with the job within which the XML Extender is running.
<i>trace_directory</i>	Name of an existing path and directory where the <i>dxXINSTANCE.trc</i> is placed. Required, no default.

**Examples:**

The following examples show starting the trace, with file, *dxxdb2inst1.trc*, in the */u/user1/dxx/trace* directory.

**From the Qshell:**

```
dxxtnc on user1 /u/user1/trace
```

**From the iSeries Navigator:**

```
call myschema.QZXMTRC('on', 'user1', '/u/user1/trace');
```

**From the OS command line:**

```
call QDBXM/QZXMTRC PARM(on user1 '/u/user1/trace')
```

---

## Stopping the trace

**Purpose:**

Turns the trace off. Trace information is no longer logged.

**Recommendation:** Because running the trace log file size is not limited and can impact performance, turn trace off in a production environment.

**Syntax:****Stopping the trace from the Qshell:**

```
▶▶—dxxtnc—off—user_profile—▶▶
```

**Stopping the trace from the iSeries Navigator:**

```
call schema.QZXMTRC('off', 'user_profile');
```

**Stopping the trace from the OS command line:**

```
call QDBXM/QZXMTRC PARM(off user_profile)
```

**Parameters:***Table 67. Trace parameters*

Parameter	Description
<i>user_profile</i>	The name of the user profile associated with the job within which the XML Extender is running.

**Examples:**



The following examples demonstrate stopping the trace.

**From the Qshell:**

```
dxstrc off user1
```

**From the iSeries Navigator:**

```
call myschema.QZXMTRC('off', 'user1');
```

**From the OS command line:**

```
call QDBXM/QZXMTRC PARM(off user1)
```

---

## XML Extender UDF return codes

Embedded SQL statements return codes in the `SQLCODE`, `SQLWARN`, and `SQLSTATE` fields of the `SQLCA` structure. This structure is defined in an `SQLCA INCLUDE` file.

DB2 CLI calls return `SQLCODE` and `SQLSTATE` values that you can retrieve using the `SQLERROR` function.

An `SQLCODE` value of 0 means that the statement ran successfully (with possible warning conditions). A positive `SQLCODE` value means that the statement ran successfully but with a warning. (Embedded SQL statements return information about the warning that is associated with 0 or positive `SQLCODE` values in the `SQLWARN` field.) A negative `SQLCODE` value means that an error occurred.

DB2 associates a message with each `SQLCODE` value. If an XML Extender UDF encounters a warning or error condition, it passes associated information to DB2 database for inclusion in the `SQLCODE` message.

Embedded SQL statements and DB2 database CLI calls that invoke the DB2 XML Extender UDFs might return `SQLCODE` messages and `SQLSTATE` values that are unique to these UDFs, but DB2 database returns these values in the same way that it does for other embedded SQL statements or other DB2 database CLI calls. Thus, the way that you access these values is the same as for embedded SQL statements or DB2 database CLI calls that do not start the DB2 database XML Extender UDFs.

---

## XML Extender stored procedure return codes

The XML Extender provides return codes to help resolve problems with stored procedures. When you receive a return code from a stored procedure, check the following file, which matches the return code with an XML Extender error message number and the symbolic constant.

```
/qibm/ProdData/DB2Extenders/XML/include/dxxrc.h
```

**Related reference:**

- “SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers for XML Extender”

---

## SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers for XML Extender

*Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers*

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
00000	DXXnnnnI	No error occurred.
01HX0	DXXD003W	The element or attribute specified in the path expression is missing from the XML document.

Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers (continued)

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
38X00	DXXC000E	The XML Extender is unable to open the specified file.
38X01	DXXA072E	XML Extender tried to automatically bind the database before enabling it, but could not find the bind files.
	DXXC001E	The XML Extender could not find the file specified.
38X02	DXXC002E	The XML Extender is unable to read data from the specified file.
38X03	DXXC003E	The XML Extender is unable to write data to the file.
	DXXC011E	The XML Extender is unable to write data to the trace control file.
38X04	DXXC004E	The XML Extender was unable to operate the specified locator.
38X05	DXXC005E	The file size is greater than the XMLVarchar size, and the XML Extender is unable to import all the data from the file.
38X06	DXXC006E	The file size is greater than the size of the XMLCLOB, and the XML Extender is unable to import all the data from the file.
38X07	DXXC007E	The number of bytes in the LOB locator does not equal the file size.
38X08	DXXD001E	A scalar extraction function used a location path that occurs multiple times. A scalar function can use only a location path that does not have multiple occurrence.
38X09	DXXD002E	The path expression is syntactically incorrect.
38X10	DXXG002E	The XML Extender was unable to allocate memory from the operating system.
38X11	DXXA009E	This stored procedure is for an XML column only.
38X12	DXXA010E	While attempting to enable the column, the XML Extender could not find the DTD ID, which is the identifier specified for the DTD in the document access definition (DAD) file.

Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers (continued)

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
	DXXQ060E	The XML Extender could not find the SCHEMA ID while attempting to enable the column. The SCHEMA ID corresponds to the value of the location attribute of the nonnamespacelocation tag which is inside the schemabindings tag in the DAD file.
38X13	DXXQ072E	The XML Extender uses the XML Parser that is delivered with the XML Toolkit for iSeries.
38X14	DXXD000E	There was an attempt to store an invalid document into a table. Validation failed.
38X15	DXXA056E	The validation element in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXA057E	The name attribute of a side table in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXA058E	The name attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXA059E	The type attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXA060E	The path attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXA061E	The multi_occurrence attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.
	DXXQ000E	A mandatory element is missing from the document access definition (DAD) file.
	DXXQ056E	The specified element/attribute cannot be mapped to a column that is specified as part of a foreign key. Data values for foreign keys are determined by that of the primary keys; a mapping of the specified element/attribute in the XML document to a table and column is not necessary.
	DXXQ057E	The schemabindings and DTD ID tags cannot exist together in the DAD file.
	DXXQ058E	The nonnamespacelocation tag inside the schemabindings tag is missing in the DAD file.

Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers (continued)

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
	DXXQ059E	The doctype tag cannot be located inside the XCollection tag in the DAD for schema validation.
	DXXQ062E	This error condition is usually caused by a missing multi_occurrence = YES specification on the parent element_node of the given element or attribute.
	DXXQ063E	The value of the multi_occurrence attribute on the specified element_node in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing. The value must be 'yes' or 'no', case insensitive.
	DXXQ064E	A key column specified in the join condition was not mapped to any element or attribute node.
38X16	DXXG004E	A null value for a required parameter was passed to an XML stored procedure.
38X17	DXXQ001E	The SQL statement in the document access definition (DAD) file or the statement that overrides it is not valid. A SELECT statement is required for generating XML documents.
38X18	DXXG001E	XML Extender encountered an internal error.
	DXXG006E	XML Extender encountered an internal error while using CLI.
38X19	DXXQ002E	The system is running out of space in memory or disk. There is no space to contain the resulting XML documents.
38X20	DXXQ003W	The user-defined SQL query generates more XML documents than the specified maximum. Only the specified number of documents are returned.
38X21	DXXQ004E	The specified column is not one of the columns in the result of the SQL query.
38X22	DXXQ005E	The mapping of the SQL query to XML is incorrect.
38X23	DXXQ006E	An attribute_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a name attribute.
38X24	DXXQ007E	The attribute_node element in the document access definition (DAD) does not have a column element or RDB_node.

Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers (continued)

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
38X25	DXXQ008E	A text_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a column element.
38X26	DXXQ009E	The specified result table could not be found in the system catalog.
38X27	DXXQ010E DXXQ040E	The RDB_node of the attribute_node or text_node must have a table.
	DXXQ011E	The RDB_node of the attribute_node or text_node must have a column.
	DXXQ017E	An XML document generated by the XML Extender is too large to fit into the column of the result table.
	DXXQ040E	The specified element name in document access definition (DAD) file is wrong.
38X28	DXXQ012E	XML Extender could not find the expected element while processing the DAD.
	DXXQ016E	All tables must be defined in the RDB_node of the top element in the document access definition (DAD) file. Sub-element tables must match the tables defined in the top element. The table name in this RDB_node is not in the top element.
38X29	DXXQ013E	The element table or column must have a name in the document access definition (DAD) file.
	DXXQ015E	The condition in the condition element in the document access definition (DAD) file has an invalid format.
	DXXQ061E	The format of the string representation is invalid. If the string is a date, time, or timestamp value, the syntax does not conform to its data type.
38X30	DXXQ014E	An element_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a name attribute.
	DXXQ018E	The ORDER BY clause is missing from the SQL statement in a document access definition (DAD) file that maps SQL to XML.
38X31	DXXQ019E	The objids element does not have a column element in the document access definition (DAD) file that maps SQL to XML.

Table 68. SQLSTATE codes and associated message numbers (continued)

SQLSTATE	Message Number	Description
38X33	DXXG005E	This parameter is not supported in this release. It will be supported in the future release.
38X34	DXXG000E	An invalid file name was specified.
38X36	DXXA073E	The database was not bound when you tried to enable it.
38X37	DXXG007E	The server operating system locale is inconsistent with the DB2 code page.
38X38	DXXG008E	The server operating system locale can not be found in the code page table.
38X41	DXXQ048E	The stylesheet processor returned an internal error. The XML document or the stylesheet might not be valid.
38X42	DXXQ049E	The specified output file already exists in this directory.
38X43	DXXQ050E	The UDF was unable to create a unique file name for the output document in the specified directory because it does not have access. All file names that can be generated are in use or directory might not exist.
38X44	DXXQ051E	One or more input or output parameters have no valid value.
38X45	DXXQ055E	ICU error encountered during conversion operation.

## XML Extender messages

**DXXA000I** Enabling column *<column\_name>*. Please Wait.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action required.

**DXXA001S** An unexpected error occurred in build *<build\_ID>*, file *<file\_name>*, and line *<line\_number>*.

**Explanation:** An unexpected error occurred.

**User response:** If this error persists, contact your Software Service Provider. When reporting the error, be sure to include all the message text, the trace file, and an explanation of how to reproduce the problem.

**DXXA002I** Connecting to database *<database>*.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action required.

**DXXA003E** Cannot connect to database *<database>*.

**Explanation:** The database specified might not exist or could be corrupted.

**User response:**

1. Ensure the database is specified correctly.
2. Ensure the database exists and is accessible.
3. Determine if the database is corrupted. If it is, ask your database administrator to recover it from a backup.

**DXXA004E** Cannot enable database *<database>*.

**Explanation:** The database might already be enabled or might be corrupted.

**User response:**

1. Determine if the database is enabled.
2. Determine if the database is corrupted. If it is, ask your database administrator to recover it from a backup.

---

**DXXA005I** Enabling database *<database>*. Please wait.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA006I** The database *<database>* was enabled successfully.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA007E** Cannot disable database *<database>*.

**Explanation:** The database cannot be disabled by XML Extender if it contains any XML columns or collections.

**User response:** Backup any important data, disable any XML columns or collections, and update or drop any tables until there are no XML data types left in the database.

---

**DXXA008I** Disabling column *<column\_name>*. Please Wait.

**Explanation:** This is an information message.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA009E** Xcolumn tag is not specified in the DAD file.

**Explanation:** This stored procedure is for XML Column only.

**User response:** Ensure the Xcolumn tag is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA010E** Attempt to find DTD ID *<dtid>* failed.

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable the column, the XML Extender could not find the DTD ID, which is the identifier specified for the DTD in the document access definition (DAD) file.

**User response:** Ensure the correct value for the DTD ID is specified in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA011E** Inserting a record into DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table failed.

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable the column, the XML Extender could not insert a record into the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table.

**User response:** Ensure the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table exists and that a record by the same name does not already exist in the table.

---

---

**DXXA012E** Attempt to update DB2XML.DTD\_REF table failed.

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable the column, the XML Extender could not update the DB2XML.DTD\_REF table.

**User response:** Ensure the DB2XML.DTD\_REF table exists. Determine whether the table is corrupted or if the administration user ID has the correct authority to update the table.

---

**DXXA013E** Attempt to alter table *<table\_name>* failed.

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable the column, the XML Extender could not alter the specified table.

**User response:** Check the privileges required to alter the table.

---

**DXXA014E** The specified root ID column: *<root\_id>* is not a single primary key of table *<table\_name>*.

**Explanation:** The root ID specified is either not a key, or it is not a single key of table *table\_name*.

**User response:** Ensure the specified root ID is the single primary key of the table.

---

**DXXA015E** The column DXXROOT\_ID already exists in table *<table\_name>*.

**Explanation:** The column DXXROOT\_ID exists, but was not created by XML Extender.

**User response:** Specify a primary column for the root ID option when enabling a column, using a different different column name.

---

**DXXA016E** The input table *<table\_name>* does not exist.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender was unable to find the specified table in the system catalog.

**User response:** Ensure that the table exists in the database, and is specified correctly.

---

**DXXA017E** The input column *<column\_name>* does not exist in the specified table *<table\_name>*.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender was unable to find the column in the system catalog.

**User response:** Ensure the column exists in a user table.

---

---

**DXXA018E** The specified column is not enabled for XML data.

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable the column, XML Extender could not find the column in the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table, indicating that the column is not enabled. If the column is not XML-enabled, you do not need to disable it.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA019E** A input parameter required to enable the column is null.

**Explanation:** A required input parameter for the enable\_column() stored procedure is null.

**User response:** Check all the input parameters for the enable\_column() stored procedure.

---

**DXXA020E** Columns cannot be found in the table <table\_name>.

**Explanation:** While attempting to create the default view, the XML Extender could not find columns in the specified table.

**User response:** Ensure the column and table name are specified correctly.

---

**DXXA021E** Cannot create the default view <default\_view>.

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable a column, the XML Extender could not create the specified view.

**User response:** Ensure that the default view name is unique. If a view with the name already exists, specify a unique name for the default view.

---

**DXXA022I** Column <column\_name> enabled.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No response required.

---

**DXXA023E** Cannot find the DAD file.

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable a column, the XML Extender was unable to find the document access definition (DAD) file.

**User response:** Ensure you specified the correct database name, table name, or column name.

---

**DXXA024E** The XML Extender encountered an internal error while accessing the system catalog tables.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender was unable to access system catalog table.

**User response:** Ensure the database is in a stable state.

---

---

**DXXA025E** Cannot drop the default view <default\_view>.

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable a column, the XML Extender could not drop the default view.

**User response:** Ensure the administration user ID for XML Extender has the privileges necessary to drop the default view.

---

**DXXA026E** Unable to drop the side table <side\_table>.

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable a column, the XML Extender was unable to drop the specified table.

**User response:** Ensure that the administrator user ID for XML Extender has the privileges necessary to drop the table.

---

**DXXA027E** Could not disable the column.

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The system is out of memory.
- A trigger with this name does not exist.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

---

**DXXA028E** Could not disable the column.

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The system is out of memory.
- A trigger with this name does not exist.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

---

**DXXA029E** Could not disable the column.

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The system is out of memory.
- A trigger with this name does not exist.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

---



---

**DXXA030E Could not disable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The system is out of memory.
- A trigger with this name does not exist.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

---

**DXXA031E Unable to reset the DXXROOT\_ID column value in the application table to NULL.**

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable a column, the XML Extender was unable to set the value of DXXROOT\_ID in the application table to NULL.

**User response:** Ensure that the administrator user ID for XML Extender has the privileges necessary to alter the application table.

---

**DXXA032E Decrement of USAGE\_COUNT in DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table failed.**

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable the column, the XML Extender was unable to reduce the value of the USAGE\_COUNT column by one.

**User response:** Ensure that the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table exists and that the administrator user ID for XML Extender has the necessary privileges to update the table.

---

**DXXA033E Attempt to delete a row from the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table failed.**

**Explanation:** While attempting to disable a column, the XML Extender was unable to delete its associate row in the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table.

**User response:** Ensure that the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table exists and that the administration user ID for XML Extender has the privileges necessary to update this table.

---

**DXXA034I XML Extender has successfully disabled column <column\_name>.**

**Explanation:** This is an informational message

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA035I XML Extender is disabling database <database>. Please wait.**

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXA036I XML Extender has successfully disabled database <database>.**

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXA037E The specified table space name is longer than 18 characters.**

**Explanation:** The table space name cannot be longer than 18 alphanumeric characters.

**User response:** Specify a name less than 18 characters.

---

**DXXA038E The specified default view name is longer than 18 characters.**

**Explanation:** The default view name cannot be longer than 18 alphanumeric characters.

**User response:** Specify a name less than 18 characters.

---

**DXXA039E The specified ROOT\_ID name is longer than 18 characters.**

**Explanation:** The ROOT\_ID name cannot be longer than 18 alphanumeric characters.

**User response:** Specify a name less than 18 characters.

---

**DXXA046E Unable to create the side table <side\_table>.**

**Explanation:** While attempting to enable a column, the XML Extender was unable to create the specified side table.

**User response:** Ensure that the administrator user ID for XML Extender has the privileges necessary to create the side table.

---

**DXXA047E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

---

**DXXA048E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.

- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA049E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA050E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA051E Could not disable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The system is out of memory.
- A trigger with this name does not exist.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA052E Could not disable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not disable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem

persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA053E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA054E Could not enable the column.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not enable a column because an internal trigger failed. Possible causes:

- The DAD file has incorrect syntax.
- The system is out of memory.
- Another trigger exists with the same name.

**User response:** Use the trace facility to create a trace file and try to correct the problem. If the problem persists, contact your Software Service Provider and provide the trace file.

**DXXA056E The validation value *<validation\_value>* in the DAD file is invalid.**

**Explanation:** The validation element in document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the validation element is specified correctly in the DAD file.

**DXXA057E A side table name *<side\_table\_name>* in DAD is invalid.**

**Explanation:** The name attribute of a side table in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the name attribute of a side table is specified correctly in the DAD file.

**DXXA058E A column name *<column\_name>* in the DAD file is invalid.**

**Explanation:** The name attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the name attribute of a column is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA059E** The type *<column\_type>* of column *<column\_name>* in the DAD file is invalid.

**Explanation:** The type attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the type attribute of a column is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA060E** The path attribute *<location\_path>* of *<column\_name>* in the DAD file is invalid.

**Explanation:** The path attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the path attribute of a column is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA061E** The multi\_occurrence attribute *<multi\_occurrence>* of *<column\_name>* in the DAD file is invalid.

**Explanation:** The multi\_occurrence attribute of a column in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing.

**User response:** Ensure that the multi\_occurrence attribute of a column is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXA062E** Unable to retrieve the column number for *<column\_name>* in table *<table\_name>*.

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not retrieve the column number for *column\_name* in table *table\_name* from the system catalog.

**User response:** Make sure the application table is well defined.

---

**DXXA063I** Enabling collection *<collection\_name>*. Please Wait.

**Explanation:** This is an information message.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXA064I** Disabling collection *<collection\_name>*. Please Wait.

**Explanation:** This is an information message.

**User response:** No action required.

---

---

**DXXA065E** Calling stored procedure *<procedure\_name>* failed.

**Explanation:** Check the shared library db2xml and see if the permission is correct.

**User response:** Make sure the client has permission to run the stored procedure.

---

**DXXA066I** XML Extender has successfully disabled collection *<collection\_name>*.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No response required.

---

**DXXA067I** XML Extender has successfully enabled collection *<collection\_name>*.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No response required.

---

**DXXA068I** XML Extender has successfully turned the trace on.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No response required.

---

**DXXA069I** XML Extender has successfully turned the trace off.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message.

**User response:** No response required.

---

**DXXA070W** The database has already been enabled.

**Explanation:** The enable database command was executed on the enabled database

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXA071W** The database has already been disabled.

**Explanation:** The disable database command was executed on the disabled database

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXA072E** XML Extender couldn't find the bind files. Bind the database before enabling it.

**Explanation:** XML Extender tried to automatically bind the database before enabling it, but could not find the bind files

**User response:** Bind the database before enabling it.

---

---

**DXXA073E** The database is not bound. Please bind the database before enabling it.

**Explanation:** The database was not bound when user tried to enable it.

**User response:** Bind the database before enabling it.

---

**DXXA074E** Wrong parameter type. The stored procedure expects a STRING parameter.

**Explanation:** The stored procedure expects a STRING parameter.

**User response:** Declare the input parameter to be STRING type.

---

**DXXA075E** Wrong parameter type. The input parameter should be a LONG type.

**Explanation:** The stored procedure expects the input parameter to be a LONG type.

**User response:** Declare the input parameter to be a LONG type.

---

**DXXA076E** XML Extender trace instance ID invalid.

**Explanation:** Cannot start trace with the instance ID provided.

**User response:** Ensure that the instance ID is a valid iSeries user ID.

---

**DXXA077E** The license key is not valid. See the server error log for more detail.

**Explanation:** The software license has expired or does not exist.

**User response:** Contact your service provider to obtain a new software license.

---

**DXXC000E** Unable to open the specified file.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender is unable to open the specified file.

**User response:** Ensure that the application user ID has read and write permission for the file.

---

**DXXC001E** The specified file is not found.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender could not find the file specified.

**User response:** Ensure that the file exists and the path is specified correctly.

---

---

**DXXC002E** Unable to read file.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender is unable to read data from the specified file.

**User response:** Ensure that the application user ID has read permission for the file.

---

**DXXC003E** Unable to write to the specified file.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender is unable to write data to the file.

**User response:** Ensure that the application user ID has write permission for the file or that the file system has sufficient space.

---

**DXXC004E** Unable to operate the LOB Locator:  
*rc=<locator\_rc>*.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender was unable to operate the specified locator.

**User response:** Ensure the LOB Locator is set correctly.

---

**DXXC005E** Input file size is greater than XMLVarchar size.

**Explanation:** The file size is greater than the XMLVarchar size and the XML Extender is unable to import all the data from the file.

**User response:** Use the XMLCLOB column type.

---

**DXXC006E** The input file exceeds the DB2 database LOB limit.

**Explanation:** The file size is greater than the size of the XMLCLOB and the XML Extender is unable to import all the data from the file.

**User response:** Decompose the file into smaller objects or use an XML collection.

---

**DXXC007E** Unable to retrieve data from the file to the LOB Locator.

**Explanation:** The number of bytes in the LOB Locator does not equal the file size.

**User response:** Ensure the LOB Locator is set correctly.

---

**DXXC008E** Can not remove the file *<file\_name>*.

**Explanation:** The file has a sharing access violation or is still open.

**User response:** Close the file or stop any processes that are holding the file. You might have to stop and restart DB2.

---

---

**DXXC009E** Unable to create file to *<directory>* directory.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender is unable to create a file in directory *directory*.

**User response:** Ensure that the directory exists, that the application user ID has write permission for the directory, and that the file system has sufficient space for the file.

---

**DXXC010E** Error while writing to file *<file\_name>*.

**Explanation:** There was an error while writing to the file *file\_name*.

**User response:** Ensure that the file system has sufficient space for the file.

---

**DXXC011E** Unable to write to the trace control file.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender is unable to write data to the trace control file.

**User response:** Ensure that the application user ID has write permission for the file or that the file system has sufficient space.

---

**DXXC012E** Cannot create temporary file.

**Explanation:** Cannot create file in system temp directory.

**User response:** Ensure that the application user ID has write permission for the file system temp directory or that the file system has sufficient space for the file.

---

**DXXC013E** The results of the extract UDF exceed the size limit for the UDF return type.

**Explanation:** The data returned by an extract UDF must fit into the size limit of the return type of the UDF, as defined in the IBM DB2 XML Extender Administration and Programming guide. For example, the results of `extractVarchar` must be no more than 4000 bytes (including the terminating NULL).

**User response:** Use an extract UDF that has a larger size limit for the return type: 254 bytes for `extractChar()`, 4 KB for `extractVarchar()`, and 2 GB for `extractClob()`.

---

**DXXD000E** An invalid XML document is rejected.

**Explanation:** There was an attempt to store an invalid document into a table. Validation has failed.

**User response:** Check the document with its DTD using an editor that can view invisible invalid characters. To suppress this error, turn off validation in the DAD file.

---

**DXXD001E** *<location\_path>* occurs multiple times.

**Explanation:** A scalar extraction function used a location path that occurs multiple times. A scalar function can only use a location path that does not have multiple occurrences.

**User response:** Use a table function (add an 's' to the end of the scalar function name).

---

**DXXD002E** A syntax error occurred near position *<position>* in the search path.

**Explanation:** The path expression is syntactically incorrect.

**User response:** Correct the search path argument of the query. Refer to the documentation for the syntax of path expressions.

---

**DXXD003W** Path not found. Null is returned.

**Explanation:** The element or attribute specified in the path expression is missing from the XML document.

**User response:** Verify that the specified path is correct.

---

**DXXG000E** The file name *<file\_name>* is invalid.

**Explanation:** An invalid file name was specified.

**User response:** Specify a correct file name and try again.

---

**DXXG001E** An internal error occurred in build *<build\_ID>*, file *<file\_name>*, and line *<line\_number>*.

**Explanation:** XML Extender encountered an internal error.

**User response:** Contact your Software Service Provider. When reporting the error, be sure to include all the messages, the trace file and how to reproduce the error.

---

**DXXG002E** The system is out of memory.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender was unable to allocate memory from the operating system.

**User response:** Close some applications and try again. If the problem persists, refer to your operating system documentation for assistance. Some operating systems might require that you reboot the system to correct the problem.

---

**DXXG004E** Invalid null parameter.

**Explanation:** A null value for a required parameter was passed to an XML stored procedure.

**User response:** Check all required parameters in the argument list for the stored procedure call.

---

**DXXG005E Parameter not supported.**

**Explanation:** This parameter is not supported in this release, will be supported in the future release.

**User response:** Set this parameter to NULL.

---

**DXXG006E Internal Error CLISTATE=<clistate>, RC=<cli\_rc>, build <build\_ID>, file <file\_name>, line <line\_number> CLIMSG=<CLI\_msg>.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender encountered an internal error while using CLI.

**User response:** Contact your Software Service Provider. Potentially this error can be caused by incorrect user input. When reporting the error, be sure to include all output messages, trace log, and how to reproduce the problem. Where possible, send any DADs, XML documents, and table definitions which apply.

---

**DXXG007E Locale <locale> is inconsistent with DB2 database code page <code\_page>.**

**Explanation:** The server operating system locale is inconsistent with DB2 database code page.

**User response:** Correct the server operating system locale and restart DB2.

---

**DXXG008E Locale <locale> is not supported.**

**Explanation:** The server operating system locale can not be found in the code page table.

**User response:** Correct the server operating system locale and restart DB2.

---

**DXXG017E The limit for XML\_Extender\_constant has been exceeded in build build\_ID, file file\_name, and line line\_number.**

**Explanation:** The limit for the XML Extender constant named was exceeded in the code location specified by the build, file, and line number.

**User response:** Check if your application has exceeded a value in the limits table in the *IBM DB2 XML Extender Administration and Programming Guide*. If no limit has been exceeded, contact your Software Service Provider. When reporting the error, include all output messages, trace files, and information on how to reproduce the problem such as input DADs, XML documents, and table definitions.

---

**DXXM001W A DB2 database error occurred.**

**Explanation:** DB2 encountered the specified error.

**User response:** See any accompanying messages for further explanation and refer to DB2 database product

messages and codes documentation for your operating system.

---

**DXXQ000E <Element> is missing from the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** A mandatory element is missing from the document access definition (DAD) file.

**User response:** Add the missing element to the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ001E Invalid SQL statement for XML generation.**

**Explanation:** The SQL statement in the document access definition (DAD) or the one that overrides it is not valid. A SELECT statement is required for generating XML documents.

**User response:** Correct the SQL statement.

---

**DXXQ002E Cannot generate storage space to hold XML documents.**

**Explanation:** The system is running out of space in memory or disk. There is no space to contain the resulting XML documents.

**User response:** Limit the number of documents to be generated. Reduce the size of each documents by removing some unnecessary element and attribute nodes from the document access definition (DAD) file.

---

**DXXQ003W Result exceeds maximum.**

**Explanation:** The user-defined SQL query generates more XML documents than the specified maximum. Only the specified number of documents are returned.

**User response:** No action is required. If all documents are needed, specify zero as the maximum number of documents.

---

**DXXQ004E The column <column\_name> is not in the result of the query.**

**Explanation:** The specified column is not one of the columns in the result of the SQL query.

**User response:** Change the specified column name in the document access definition (DAD) file to make it one of the columns in the result of the SQL query. Alternatively, change the SQL query so that it has the specified column in its result.

---

**DXXQ005E Wrong relational mapping. The element <element\_name> is at a lower level than its child column <column\_name>.**

**Explanation:** The mapping of the SQL query to XML is incorrect.

**User response:** Make sure that the columns in the

result of the SQL query are in a top-down order of the relational hierarchy. Also make sure that there is a single-column candidate key to begin each level. If such a key is not available in a table, the query should generate one for that table using a table expression and the DB2 database built-in function generate\_unique().

---

**DXXQ006E An attribute\_node element has no name.**

**Explanation:** An attribute\_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a name attribute.

**User response:** Ensure that every attribute\_node has a name in the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ007E The attribute\_node <attribute\_name> has no column element or RDB\_node.**

**Explanation:** The attribute\_node element in the document access definition (DAD) does not have a column element or RDB\_node.

**User response:** Ensure that every attribute\_node has a column element or RDB\_node in the DAD.

---

**DXXQ008E A text\_node element has no column element.**

**Explanation:** A text\_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a column element.

**User response:** Ensure that every text\_node has a column element in the DAD.

---

**DXXQ009E Result table <table\_name> does not exist.**

**Explanation:** The specified result table could not be found in the system catalog.

**User response:** Create the result table before calling the stored procedure.

---

**DXXQ010E RDB\_node of <node\_name> does not have a table in the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** The RDB\_node of the attribute\_node or text\_node must have a table.

**User response:** Specify the table of RDB\_node for attribute\_node or text\_node in the document access definition (DAD) file.

---

**DXXQ011E RDB\_node element of <node\_name> does not have a column in the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** The RDB\_node of the attribute\_node or text\_node must have a column.

**User response:** Specify the column of RDB\_node for attribute\_node or text\_node in the document access definition (DAD) file.

---

**DXXQ012E Errors occurred in DAD.**

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not find the expected element while processing the DAD.

**User response:** Check that the DAD is a valid XML document and contains all the elements required by the DAD DTD. Consult the XML Extender publication for the DAD DTD.

---

**DXXQ013E The table or column element does not have a name in the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** The element table or column must have a name in the document access definition (DAD) file.

**User response:** Specify the name of table or column element in the DAD.

---

**DXXQ014E An element\_node element has no name.**

**Explanation:** An element\_node element in the document access definition (DAD) file does not have a name attribute.

**User response:** Ensure that every element\_node element has a name in the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ015E The condition format is invalid.**

**Explanation:** The condition in the condition element in the document access definition (DAD) has an invalid format.

**User response:** Ensure that the format of the condition is valid.

---

**DXXQ016E The table name in this RDB\_node is not defined in the top element of the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** All tables must be defined in the RDB\_node of the top element in the document access definition (DAD) file. Sub-element tables must match the tables defined in the top element. The table name in this RDB\_node is not in the top element.

**User response:** Ensure that the table of the RDB node is defined in the top element of the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ017E The column in the result table <table\_name> is too small.**

**Explanation:** An XML document generated by the XML Extender is too large to fit into the column of the result table.

**User response:** Drop the result table. Create another result table with a bigger column. Rerun the stored procedure.

---

**DXXQ018E** The ORDER BY clause is missing from the SQL statement.

**Explanation:** The ORDER BY clause is missing from the SQL statement in a document access definition (DAD) file that maps SQL to XML.

**User response:** Edit the DAD file. Add an ORDER BY clause that contains the entity-identifying columns.

---

**DXXQ019E** The element objids has no column element in the DAD file.

**Explanation:** The objids element does not have a column element in the document access definition (DAD) file that maps SQL to XML.

**User response:** Edit the DAD file. Add the key columns as sub-elements of the element objids.

---

**DXXQ020I** XML successfully generated.

**Explanation:** The requested XML documents have been successfully generated from the database.

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXQ021E** Table <table\_name> does not have column <column\_name>.

**Explanation:** The table does not have the specified column in the database.

**User response:** Specify another column name in DAD or add the specified column into the table database.

---

**DXXQ022E** Column <column\_name> of <table\_name> should have type <type\_name>.

**Explanation:** The type of the column is wrong.

**User response:** Correct the type of the column in the document access definition (DAD).

---

**DXXQ023E** Column <column\_name> of <table\_name> cannot be longer than <length>.

**Explanation:** The length defined for the column in the DAD is too long.

**User response:** Correct the column length in the document access definition (DAD).

---

**DXXQ024E** Can not create table <table\_name>.

**Explanation:** The specified table can not be created.

**User response:** Ensure that the user ID creating the table has the necessary authority to create a table in the database.

---

---

**DXXQ025I** XML decomposed successfully.

**Explanation:** An XML document has been decomposed and stored in a collection successfully.

**User response:** No action is required.

---

**DXXQ026E** XML data <xml\_name> is too large to fit in column <column\_name>.

**Explanation:** The specified piece of data from an XML document is too large to fit into the specified column.

**User response:** Increase the length of the column using the ALTER TABLE statement or reduce the size of the data by editing the XML document.

---

**DXXQ028E** Cannot find the collection <collection\_name> in the XML\_USAGE table.

**Explanation:** A record for the collection cannot be found in the XML\_USAGE table.

**User response:** Verify that you have enabled the collection.

---

**DXXQ029E** Cannot find the DAD in XML\_USAGE table for the collection <collection\_name>.

**Explanation:** A DAD record for the collection cannot be found in the XML\_USAGE table.

**User response:** Ensure that you have enabled the collection correctly.

---

**DXXQ030E** Wrong XML override syntax.

**Explanation:** The XML\_override value is specified incorrectly in the stored procedure.

**User response:** Ensure that the syntax of XML\_override is correct.

---

**DXXQ031E** Table name cannot be longer than maximum length allowed by DB2.

**Explanation:** The table name specified by the condition element in the DAD is too long.

**User response:** Correct the length of the table name in document access definition (DAD).

---

**DXXQ032E** Column name cannot be longer than maximum length allowed by DB2.

**Explanation:** The column name specified by the condition element in the DAD is too long.

**User response:** Correct the length of the column name in the document access definition (DAD).

---



---

**DXXQ033E Invalid identifier starting at <identifier>**

**Explanation:** The string is not a valid DB2 database SQL identifier.

**User response:** Correct the string in the DAD to conform to the rules for DB2 database SQL identifiers.

---

**DXXQ034E Invalid condition element in top RDB\_node of DAD: <condition>**

**Explanation:** The condition element must be a valid WHERE clause consisting of join conditions connected by the conjunction AND.

**User response:** See the XML Extender documentation for the correct syntax of the join condition in a DAD.

---

**DXXQ035E Invalid join condition in top RDB\_node of DAD: <condition>**

**Explanation:** Column names in the condition element of the top RDB\_node must be qualified with the table name if the DAD specifies multiple tables.

**User response:** See the XML Extender documentation for the correct syntax of the join condition in a DAD.

---

**DXXQ036E A Schema name specified under a DAD condition tag is longer than allowed.**

**Explanation:** An error was detected while parsing text under a condition tag within the DAD. The condition text contains an id qualified by a schema name that is too long.

**User response:** Correct the text of the condition tags in document access definition (DAD).

---

**DXXQ037E Cannot generate <element> with multiple occurrences.**

**Explanation:** The element node and its descendants have no mapping to database, but its multi\_occurrence equals YES.

**User response:** Correct the DAD by either setting the multi\_occurrence to NO or create a RDB\_node in one of its descendants.

---

**DXXQ038E The SQL statement is too long: SQL\_statement**

**Explanation:** The SQL statement specified in the <SQL\_stmt> element of DAD exceeds the allowed number of bytes.

**User response:** Reduce the length of the SQL statement to less than or equal to 32765 bytes for Windows and UNIX, or 16380 bytes for z/OS and iSeries.

---

---

**DXXQ039E Too many columns specified for a table in the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** A DAD file used for decomposition or RDB composition can have a maximum of 100 text\_node and attribute\_node elements that specify unique columns within the same table.

**User response:** Reduce the total number of text\_node and attribute\_node elements that refer to unique columns within the same table to no more than 100.

---

**DXXQ040E The element name <element\_name> in the DAD file is invalid.**

**Explanation:** The specified element name in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong.

**User response:** Ensure that the element name is typed correctly in the DAD file. See the DTD for the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ041W XML document successfully generated. One or more override paths specified is invalid and ignored.**

**Explanation:** Specify only one override path.

**User response:** Ensure that the element name is typed correctly in the DAD file. See the DTD for the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ043E Attribute <attr\_name> not found under element <elem\_name>.**

**Explanation:** The attribute <attr\_name> was not present in element <elem\_name> or one of its child elements.

**User response:** Ensure the attribute appears in the XML document everywhere that the DAD requires it.

---

**DXXQ044E Element <elem\_name> does not have an ancestor element<ancestor>.**

**Explanation:** According to the DAD, <ancestor> is an ancestor element of <elem\_name> . In the XML document, one or more element <elem\_name> does not have such an ancestor.

**User response:** Ensure that the nesting of elements in the XML document conforms to what is specified in the corresponding DAD.

---

**DXXQ045E Subtree under element <elem\_name> contains multiple attributes named<attrib\_name>.**

**Explanation:** A subtree under <elem\_name> in the XML document contains multiple instances of attribute<attrib\_name> , which according to the DAD, is to be decomposed into the same row. Elements or

attributes that are to be decomposed must have unique names.

**User response:** Ensure that the element or attribute in the subtree has a unique name.

---

**DXXQ046W The DTD ID was not found in the DAD.**

**Explanation:** In the DAD, VALIDATION is set to YES, but the DTDID element is not specified. No validation check is performed.

**User response:** No action is required. If validation is needed, specify the DTDID element in the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ047E Parser error on line <mv> linenumber</mv> column *colnumber*: *msg***

**Explanation:** The parser could not parse the document because of the reported error.

**User response:** Correct the error in the document, consulting the XML specifications if necessary.

---

**DXXQ048E Internal error - see trace file.**

**Explanation:** The stylesheet processor returned an internal error. The XML document or the stylesheet might not be valid.

**User response:** Ensure the XML document and the stylesheet are valid.

---

**DXXQ049E The output file already exists.**

**Explanation:** The specified output file already exists in this directory.

**User response:** Change the output path or file name for the output document to a unique name or delete the existing file.

---

**DXXQ050E Unable to create a unique file name.**

**Explanation:** The UDF was unable to create a unique file name for the output document in the specified directory because it does not have access, all file names that can be generated are in use or directory might not exist.

**User response:** Ensure that the UDF has access to the specified directory, change to a directory with available file names.

---

**DXXQ051E No input or output data.**

**Explanation:** One or more input or output parameters have no valid value.

**User response:** Check the statement to see if required parameters are missing.

---

**DXXQ052E An error occurred while accessing the DB2XML.XML\_USAGE table.**

**Explanation:** Either the database has not been enabled or the table DB2XML.XML\_USAGE has been dropped.

**User response:** Ensure that the database has been enabled and the table DB2XML.XML\_USAGE is accessible.

---

**DXXQ053E An SQL statement failed : *msg***

**Explanation:** An SQL statement generated during XML Extender processing failed to execute.

**User response:** Examine the trace for more details. If you cannot correct the error condition, contact your softwareService provider. When reporting the error, be sure to include all the messages, the trace file and how to reproduce the error.

---

**DXXQ054E Invalid input parameter: *param***

**Explanation:** The specified input parameter to a stored procedure or UDF is invalid.

**User response:** Check the signature of the relevant stored procedure or UDF, and ensure the actual input parameter is correct.

---

**DXXQ055E ICU error: *uerror***

**Explanation:** ICU error encountered during conversion operation.

**User response:** Report the error to your software service provider. Include trace file, error message, and instructions to reproduce the error.

---

**DXXQ056E Element/attribute *xmlname* cannot be mapped to the column designated as part of the foreign key (column *column* in table *table*).**

**Explanation:** The specified element/attribute cannot be mapped to a column that is specified as part of a foreign key. Data values for foreign keys are determined by that of the primary keys; a mapping of the specified element/attribute in the XML document to a table and column is not necessary.

**User response:** Remove the RDB\_node mapping to the specified column and table in the DAD.

---

**DXXQ057E The schemabindings and dtdid tags cannot exist together in the DAD file.**

**Explanation:** The schemabindings and dtdid tags cannot exist together in the DAD file.

**User response:** Check that either the schemabindings tag or the dtdid tag exists in the DAD file, but not both.

---

**DXXQ058E** The nonnamespacelocation tag inside the schemabindings tag is missing in the DAD file.

**Explanation:** The nonnamespacelocation tag inside the schemabindings tag is missing in the DAD file.

**User response:** Add the nonnamespacelocation tag to the schemabindings tag.

---

**DXXQ059E** The doctype tag cannot be located inside the XCollection tag in the DAD for schema validation.

**Explanation:** The doctype tag cannot be located inside the XCollection tag in the DAD for schema validation.

**User response:** Remove the doctype tag inside the Xcollection tag for schema validation.

---

**DXXQ060E** Attempt to find SCHEMA ID *schemaid* failed.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender could not find the SCHEMA ID while attempting to enable the column. The SCHEMA ID corresponds to the value of the location attribute of the nonnamespacelocation tag which is inside the schemabindings tag in the DAD file.

**User response:** Check that the correct value for the SCHEMA ID is specified in the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ061E** The format of the string is invalid.

**Explanation:** The format of the string representation is invalid. If the string is a date, time, or timestamp value, the syntax does not conform to its data type.

**User response:** Check that the format of the date, time, or timestamp value conforms to the format for its data type.

---

**DXXQ062E** No rows of result set for *table* are left to produce a XML value for *element*.

**Explanation:** This error condition is usually caused by a missing multi\_occurrence = YES specification on the parent element\_node of the given element or attribute.

**User response:** Check the DAD that the value of multi\_occurrence on the parent element\_node correctly reflects the multiplicity of child element\_nodes.

---

**DXXQ063E** The multi\_occurrence attribute value on *elementname* in the DAD file is invalid.

**Explanation:** The value of the multi\_occurrence attribute on the specified element\_node in the document access definition (DAD) file is wrong or missing. The value must be 'yes' or 'no', case insensitive.

**User response:** Ensure that the multi\_occurrence

attribute is specified correctly in the DAD file.

---

**DXXQ064E** Column *column* not found in foreign table *table*.

**Explanation:** A key column specified in the join condition was not mapped to any element or attribute node.

**User response:** Check to make sure the join condition specified in the DAD file is correct, and all key columns are mapped to element or attribute nodes.

---

**DXXQ065I** All triggers relating to XML enabled columns have been successfully regenerated.

**Explanation:** This is an informational message only.

**User response:** No action required.

---

**DXXQ066E** The primary key for table *tablename* does not exist.

**Explanation:** XML Extender could not determine the primary key for table *tablename*. Check that the primary key for the table was not dropped after the column was enabled for XML.

**User response:** Alter the table to add the primary key specified as the ROOT ID when the column was enabled for XML.

---

**DXXQ067E** Attempt to *action* failed.

**Explanation:** While attempting to *action*, a SQL error occurred.

**User response:** Contact your Software Service Provider. When reporting the error, be sure to include the XML Extender trace file.

---

**DXXQ068E** Cannot set current SQLID to [userid]. SQLCODE = [sqlcode].

**Explanation:** While attempting to set current sqlid to a secondary authorization id, a SQL error occurred.

**User response:** Check that you are specifying a valid secondary authorization id and that you have authorization for the id.

---

**DXXQ069E** Cannot find element/attribute *xmlitemname* mapped to table *tablename* as foreign key for table *tab2name*.

**Explanation:** The mapping, including multi-occurrence usage, as specified by the DAD does not allow the value of *xmlitemname* to be used to populate a foreign key value of *tab2name*.

**User response:** Check the following: join condition involving the two tables; the value of multi\_occurrence

attribute of the highest level element mapping to *tablename* and its wrapper; the presence of other items that is a child of an ancestor of *xmliitemname* mapping to a different table than *tablename*.

---

**DXXQ070E** Cannot open trace file *tracefile* for output.

**Explanation:** The open of the trace file failed.

**User response:** Ensure that the process writing the trace file has write permission and that the file resides on a read/write file system.

---

**DXXQ071E** The number of mapped LOB columns that is allowed for a composition exceeds the maximum of *loblimit*.

**Explanation:** The number of mapped LOB columns that is specified in a composition DAD exceeds the maximum number allowed. Reduce the number of LOB columns.

**User response:** Check whether the LOB columns that are specified in the DAD have exceeded the maximum number. If the limit has not been exceeded, contact your Software Service Provider. When reporting the error, include all messages, trace files, and information on how to reproduce the problem such as input DADs and table definitions.

---

**DXXQ072E** XML Extender for iSeries requires the XML Toolkit for iSeries (*prodid*) with installation of option *parseropt*.

**Explanation:** The XML Extender uses the XML Parser that is delivered with the XML Toolkit for iSeries.

**User response:** Install the XML Toolkit for iSeries with the required option.

---

**DXXQ073E** The database is not enabled.

**Explanation:** The *dxxadm* administration command was executed on a database that was not enabled.

**User response:** Enable the database for XML Extender before executing any other XML Extender administration command. Note that disabling a database that has not been XML-enabled will result in the same error.

---

## Part 5. Appendixes



---

## Appendix A. Samples

This appendix shows the sample objects that are used with examples in this book.

- “XML DTD sample”
- “XML document sample: getstart.xml”
- “Document access definition files” on page 243
  - “Sample DAD file: XML column” on page 244
  - “Sample DAD file: XML collection: SQL mapping” on page 244
  - “Sample DAD file: XML: RDB\_node mapping” on page 246

---

### XML DTD sample

The following DTD is used for the getstart.xml document that is referenced throughout this guide.

```
<!xml encoding="US-ASCII"?>

<!ELEMENT Order (Customer, Part+)>
<!ATTLIST Order key CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT Customer (Name, Email)>
<!ELEMENT Name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Part (key, Quantity, ExtendedPrice, Tax, Shipment+)>
<!ELEMENT key (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ExtendedPrice (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Tax (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST Part color CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT Shipment (ShipDate, ShipMode)>
<!ELEMENT ShipDate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ShipMode (#PCDATA)>
```

*Figure 14. Sample XML DTD: getstart.dtd*

---

### XML document sample: getstart.xml

The following XML document, getstart.xml, is the sample XML document that is used in examples throughout this guide. It contains XML tags to form a purchase order.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd">
<Order key="1">
 <Customer>
 <Name>American Motors</Name>
 <Email>parts@am.com</Email>
 </Customer>
 <Part color="black ">
 <key>68</key>
 <Quantity>36</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>34850.16</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>6.000000e-02</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>BOAT </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-08-19</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>AIR </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 </Part>
 <Part color="red ">
 <key>128</key>
 <Quantity>28</Quantity>
 <ExtendedPrice>38000.00</ExtendedPrice>
 <Tax>7.000000e-02</Tax>
 <Shipment>
 <ShipDate>1998-12-30</ShipDate>
 <ShipMode>TRUCK </ShipMode>
 </Shipment>
 </Part>
</Order>

```

*Figure 15. Sample XML document: getstart.xml*

---

## Stylesheet sample: getstart.xsl

The following XML stylesheet, getstart.xsl, is the sample stylesheet referenced in Chapter 11, “Extensible stylesheet language transformation (XSLT),” on page 209.



```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0" xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">

<xsl:template match="/">
 <html>
 <head/>
 <body>

 <ol style="list-style:decimal outside">
 <xsl:for-each select="Order">
 Orderkey : <xsl:value-of select="@key"/>

 <xsl:for-each select="Customer">
 Customer

 <xsl:for-each select="Name | Email">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/><xsl:text> : </xsl:text><xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="A">
 <xsl:for-each select="Part">
 Parts

 Color : <xsl:value-of select="@color"/><xsl:text>, </xsl:text>

 <xsl:for-each select="key | Quantity | ExtendedPrice | Tax">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/><xsl:text> : </xsl:text><xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 <ol type="a">
 <xsl:for-each select="Shipment">
 Shipment

 <xsl:for-each select="ShipDate | ShipMode">
 <xsl:value-of select="name()"/><xsl:text> : </xsl:text><xsl:value-of select="."/>
 <xsl:text>, </xsl:text>
 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>

 </xsl:for-each>

 </body>
</html>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>

```

Figure 16. Sample stylesheet: *getstart.xsl*

---

## Document access definition files

The following sections contain document access definition (DAD) files that map XML data to DB2 database relational tables, using either XML column or XML collection access modes.

- “Sample DAD file: XML column” on page 244

- “Sample DAD file: XML collection: SQL mapping” shows a DAD file for an XML collection using SQL mapping.
- “Sample DAD file: XML: RDB\_node mapping” on page 246 show a DAD for an XML collection that uses RDB\_node mapping.

## Sample DAD file: XML column

This DAD file contains the mapping for an XML column, and it defines the table, side tables, and columns that are to contain the XML data.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM "dxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 <dtdid>
 "dxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"</dtdid>
 <validation>YES</validation>

 <Xcolumn>
 <table name="order_side_tab">
 <column name="order_key"
 type="integer"
 path="/Order/@Key"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
 <column name="customer"
 type="varchar(50)"
 path="/Order/Customer/Name"
 multi_occurrence="NO"/>
 </table>
 <table name="part_side_tab">
 <column name="price"
 type="decimal(10,2)"
 path="/Order/Part/ExtendedPrice"
 multi_occurrence="YES"/>
 </table>
 <table name="ship_side_tab">
 <column name="date"
 type="DATE"
 path="/Order/Part/Shipment/ShipDate"
 multi_occurrence="YES"/>
 </table>
 </Xcolumn>
</DAD>
```

Figure 17. Sample DAD file for an XML column: *getstart\_xcolumn.dad*

## Sample DAD file: XML collection: SQL mapping

This DAD file contains an SQL statement that specifies the DB2 database tables, columns, and conditions that are to contain the XML data.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "/dxxsamples/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
<validation>NO</validation>
<Xcollection>
<SQL_stmt>SELECT o.order_key, customer_name, customer_email, p.part_key, color,
quantity, price, tax, ship_id, date, mode from order_tab o, part_tab p,
(select db2xml.generate_unique()
as ship_id, date, mode, part_key from ship_tab) ass
p.price > 20000 and
p.order_key = o.order_key and
s.part_key = p.part_key
ORDER BY order_key, part_key, ship_id</SQL_stmt>
<prolog?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
<doctype>!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM
"
/dxxsamples/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>

```

Figure 18. Sample DAD file for an XML collection using SQL mapping: order\_sql.dad (Part 1 of 2)

```

<root_node>
<element_node name="Order">
 <attribute_node name="key">
 <column name="order_key"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 <text_node><column name="customer_name"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 <text_node><column name="customer_email"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">
 <attribute_node name="color">
 <column name="color"/>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="key">
 <text_node><column name="part_key"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Quantity">
 <text_node><column name="quantity"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 <text_node><column name="price"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node><column name="tax"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 <text_node><column name="date"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="ShipMode">
 <text_node><column name="mode"/></text_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
 </element_node>
</element_node>
</root_node>
</Xcollection>
</DAD>

```

Figure 18. Sample DAD file for an XML collection using SQL mapping: order\_sql.dad (Part 2 of 2)

## Sample DAD file: XML: RDB\_node mapping

This DAD file uses <RDB\_node> elements to define the DB2 database tables, columns, and conditions that are to contain XML data.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE DAD SYSTEM "SQLLIB/samples/extenders/db2xml/dtd/dad.dtd">
<DAD>
 <dtdid>E:\dtd\lineItem.dtd</dtdid>
 <validation>YES</validation>
 <Xcollection>
 <prolog>?xml version="1.0"?</prolog>
 <doctype>!DOCTYPE Order SYSTEM
 "SQLLIB/samples/extenders/db2xml/dtd/getstart.dtd"</doctype>
 <root_node>
 <element_node name="Order">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <table name="part_tab"/>

```

```

<table name="ship_tab"/>
<condition>order_tab.order_key=part_tab.order_key AND
 part_tab.part_key=ship_tab.part_key </condition>
</RDB_node>
<attribute_node name="Key">
<RDB_node>
<table name="order_tab"/>
<column name="order_key"/>
</RDB_node>
</attribute_node>
<element_node name="Customer">
 <element_node name="Name">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <column name="customer_name"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Email">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="order_tab"/>
 <column name="customer_email"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
</element_node>
 <element_node name="Part">
 <attribute_node name="Key">
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="part_key"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </attribute_node>
 <element_node name="ExtendedPrice">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="price"/>
 <condition>price > 2500.00</condition>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Tax">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="tax"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>

 <element_node name="Quantity">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="part_tab"/>
 <column name="qty"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
 </element_node>
 <element_node name="Shipment" multi_occurrence="YES">
 <element_node name="ShipDate">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="ship_tab"/>

```

```

 <column name="date"/>
 <condition>date > '1966-01-01'</condition>
 </RDB_node>
</text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="ShipMode">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="ship_tab"/>
 <column name="mode"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
<element_node name="Comment">
 <text_node>
 <RDB_node>
 <table name="ship_tab"/>
 <column name="comment"/>
 </RDB_node>
 </text_node>
</element_node>
</element_node> <!-- end of element Shipment-->
</element_node> <!-- end of element Part -->
</element_node> <!-- end of element Order -->
</root_node>

</Xcollection>

</DAD>

```

---

## Appendix B. Code page considerations

XML documents and other related files must be encoded properly for each client or server that accesses the files. The XML Extender makes some assumptions when processing a file, you need to understand how it handles code page conversions. The primary considerations are:

- Ensuring that the actual code page of the client retrieving an XML document from DB2 database matches the encoding of the document.
- Ensuring that, when the document is processed by an XML parser, the encoding declaration of the XML document is also consistent with the document's actual encoding.
- Ensuring that the locales are configured properly.

For i5/OS, the job, DB2 database, and the XML document must all have the same CCSID. The following section describes methods for ensuring that the CCSIDs are consistent.

---

### Configuring locale settings

The XML Extender selects completion and error messages from a message catalog based on your locale settings. To receive the messages in your language, you must install the XML Extender message catalog, and have the locale set up correctly. XML Extender installs the message catalog for your language in the IFS directory, /QIBM/ProdData/DB2Extenders/XML/MRIxxxx, where xxxx is the language code.

For example, the message catalog for English, 2924, is installed in the directory: /QIBM/ProdData/DB2Extenders/XML/MRI2924/dxx.cat. To have the English 2924 message catalog selected by XML Extender, set up the user profile, using the **WRKUSRPRF** command:

Language ID . . . . .	LANGID	ENU
Country/Region ID . . . . .	CNTRYID	US
Coded character set ID . . . . .	CCSID	037

All instances of XML Extender running under this user profile will use the MRI2924 message catalog.

---

### Encoding declaration considerations for XML Extender

The *encoding declaration* specifies the code page of the XML document's encoding and appears on the XML declaration statement. When using XML Extender, it is important to ensure that the encoding of the document matches the job and DB2.

### Consistent encodings and encoding declarations

When an XML document is processed or exchanged with another system, it is important that the encoding declaration corresponds to the actual encoding of the document. Ensuring that the encoding of a document is consistent with the client is important because XML tools, like parsers, generate an error for an entity that includes an encoding declaration other than that named in the declaration.

The consequences of having different code pages are the following possible situations:

- A conversion in which data is lost might occur.

- The declared encoding of the XML document might no longer be consistent with the actual document encoding, if the document is retrieved by a client with a different code page than the declared encoding of the document.

## Declaring an encoding

The default value of the encoding declaration is UTF-8, and the absence of an encoding declaration means the document is in UTF-8.

### To declare an encoding value:

In the XML document declaration specify the encoding declaration with the name of the code page of the client. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
```

---

## Recommendations for preventing inconsistent XML documents

Use one of the following recommendations for ensuring that the XML document encoding is consistent with the client code page, before handing the document to an XML processor, such as a parser:

- When exporting a document from the database using the XML Extender UDFs, try one of the following techniques (assuming XML Extender has exported the file, in the server code page, to the file system on the server):
  - Convert the document to the declared encoding code page
  - Override the declared encoding, if the tool has an override facility
  - Manually change the encoding declaration of the exported document to the document's actual encoding (that is, the server code page)
- When exporting a document from the database using the XML Extender stored procedures, try one of the following techniques (assuming the client is querying the result table, in which the composed document is stored):
  - Convert the document to the declared encoding code page
  - Override the declared encoding, if the tool has an override facility
  - Before running the stored procedure, have the client set the CCSID variable to force the client code page to a code page that is compatible with the encoding declaration of the XML document.
  - Manually change the encoding declaration of the exported document to the document's actual encoding (that is, the client code page)



---

## Appendix C. XML Extender limits

This topic describes the limits for:

- XML Extender objects
- Values returned by user-defined functions
- Stored procedures parameters
- Administration support table columns
- Composition and decomposition
- The following environment variables:
  - DB2DXX\_QUICKPOOL\_MALLOC
  - DB2DXX\_MIN\_TMPFILE\_SIZE

The following table describes the limits for XML Extender objects.

*Table 69. Limits for XML Extender objects*

Object	Limit
Maximum characters in a column name specified in a default view	10 characters
Maximum bytes in XML file path name specified as a parameter value	512 bytes
Length of the sql_stmt element in a DAD file for SQL composition	Windows and UNIX operating systems: 32,765 bytes. z/OS and iSeries operating systems: 16,380 bytes.
Maximum number of columns for one table that are specified for one table in the DAD file for RDB_node decomposition	500 columns (columns for a table) are specified by text_node and attribute_node elements in a DAD file.
Maximum number of columns in a table that can be mapped in a DAD Xcollection	Each table that is mapped in a Xcollection in the DAD file can have a maximum of 500 columns mapped to either text or attribute nodes. If you map to more than 500 columns in a table, DB2 issues message DXXQ039E, "Too many columns specified for a table in the DAD file."

The following table describes the limits values returned by XML Extender user-defined functions.

*Table 70. Limits for user-defined function value*

User-defined functions returned values	Limit
Maximum bytes returned by an extractCHAR UDF	254 bytes
Maximum bytes returned by an extractCLOB UDF	2 gigabytes
Maximum bytes returned by an extractVARCHAR UDF	4 kilobytes

The following table describes the limits for parameters of XML Extender stored procedures.

*Table 71. Limits for stored procedure parameters*

<b>Stored procedure parameters</b>	<b>Limit</b>
Maximum size of an XML document CLOB <sup>1</sup>	1 MB
Maximum size of a Document Access Definition (DAD) CLOB <sup>1</sup>	100 KB
Maximum size of <i>collectionName</i>	30 bytes
Maximum size of <i>dbName</i>	8 bytes
Maximum size of <i>tbName</i> <sup>2</sup>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>colName</i>	30 bytes
Maximum size of <i>tablespace</i>	18 bytes
Maximum size of <i>defaultView</i>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>rootID</i>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>resultTabName</i>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>resultColumn</i>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>validColumn</i>	128 bytes
Maximum size of <i>varchar_value</i>	16366 bytes

**Notes:**

1. This size can be changed for *dxxGenXMLClob* and *dxxRetrieveXMLCLOB*.
2. If the value of the *tbName* parameter is qualified by a schema name, the entire name (including the separator character) must be no longer than 128 bytes.

The following table describes the limits for the DB2XML.DTD\_REF table.

*Table 72. XML Extender limits*

<b>DB2XML.DTD_REF table columns</b>	<b>Limit</b>
Size of AUTHOR column	128 bytes
Size of CREATOR column	128 bytes
Size of UPDATOR column	128 bytes
Size of DTDID column	128 bytes
Size of CONTENT column	100 KB

Names can undergo expansion when DB2 database converts them from the client code page to the database code page. A name might fit within the size limit at the client, but exceed the limit when the stored procedure gets the converted name.

The following table describes limits for composition and decomposition.

*Table 73. Limits for XML Extender composition and decomposition*

<b>Object</b>	<b>Limit</b>
Maximum length of the name attribute in <i>elements_node</i> or <i>attribute_node</i> within a DAD	63 bytes
Maximum characters in a column name specified in a default view	10 characters

Table 73. Limits for XML Extender composition and decomposition (continued)

Object	Limit
Maximum bytes in XMLFile path name specified as a parameter value	512 bytes
Maximum number of columns in a key	16 columns

#### The DB2DXX\_MIN\_TMPFILE\_SIZE environment variable

XML Extender places large documents in temporary files to avoid using too much memory during processing. On systems with large amounts of physical memory, it is possible to avoid moving documents to temporary files, reducing the amount of input/output activity. The environment variable DB2DXX\_MIN\_TMPFILE\_SIZE instructs XML Extender to use memory buffers, rather than temporary files, for processing documents smaller than the specified value. The variable is applicable only on the server, not on a client. If multiple physical nodes participate in a multi-node partition, you can set the variable differently for each node, accurately reflecting the amount of memory that is installed on each system. If you do not set this variable, documents that exceed 128 KB are automatically placed into temporary files during processing, while documents smaller than 128 KB are processed in memory.

#### The DB2DXX\_QUICKPOOL\_MALLOC environment variable

Using the i5/OS Quick Pool memory management algorithm in the XML Extender's composition and decomposition stored procedures can improve performance. For more information on the Quick Pool memory management algorithm, refer to the *ILE C for AS/400 Run-Time Library Reference*. To activate the use of the Quick Pool memory management algorithm, set the environment variable DB2DXX\_QUICKPOOL\_MALLOC.

- To set the environment variable at the job level:  
ADDENVVAR ENVVAR(DB2DXX\_QUICKPOOL\_MALLOC) LEVEL(\*JOB)
- To set the environment variable at the system level:  
ADDENVVAR ENVVAR(DB2DXX\_QUICKPOOL\_MALLOC) LEVEL(\*SYS)



---

## XML Extender glossary

**absolute location path.** The full path name of an object. The absolute path name begins at the highest level, or "root" element, which is identified by the forward slash (/) or back slash (\) character.

**access and storage method.** Associates XML documents to a DB2 database through two major access and storage methods: XML columns and XML collections. See also *XML column* and *XML collection*.

**access function.** A user-provided function that converts the data type of text stored in a column to a type that can be processed by Net Search Extender.

**administration.** The task of preparing text documents for searching, maintaining indexes, and getting status information.

**administrative support tables.** Tables used by a DB2 database extender to process user requests on XML objects. Some administrative support tables identify user tables and columns that are enabled for XML Extender. Other administrative support tables contain attribute information about objects in enabled columns. Synonymous with metadata table.

**analyze.** To calculate numeric values for the features of an image and add the values to a QBIC catalog.

**API.** See *application programming interface*.

**application programming interface (API).**

1. A functional interface supplied by the operating system or by a separately orderable licensed program. An API allows an application program that is written in a high-level language to use specific data or functions of the operating system or the licensed programs.
2. In DB2, a function within the interface. For example, the get error message API.
3. The DB2 database extenders provide APIs for requesting user-defined functions, administrative operations, display operations, and video scene change detection.

**attribute.** See *XML attribute*.

**attribute\_node.** A representation of an attribute of an element.

**binary large object (BLOB).** A binary string whose length can be up to 2 GB. Image, audio, and video objects are stored in a DB2 database as BLOBs.

**Boolean search.** A search in which one or more search terms are combined using Boolean operators.

**browse.** To view text displayed on a computer monitor.

**browser.** A Net Search Extender function that enables you to display text on a computer monitor. See *Web browser*.

**B-tree indexing.** The native index scheme provided by the DB2 database engine. It builds index entries in the B-tree structure. Supports DB2 base data types.

**cast function.** A function that is used to convert instances of a (source) data type into instances of a different (target) data type. In general, a cast function has the name of the target data type. It has one single argument whose type is the source data type; its return type is the target data type.

**CCSID.** Coded Character Set Identifier.

**character large object (CLOB).** A character string of single-byte characters, where the string can be up to 2 GB. CLOBs have an associated code page. Text objects that contain single-byte characters are stored in a DB2 database as CLOBs.

**CLOB.** Character large object.

**code page.** An assignment of graphic characters and control function meanings to all code points. For example, assignment of characters and meanings to 256 code points for an 8-bit code.

**column data.** The data stored inside of a DB2 database column. The type of data can be any data type supported by DB2.

**compose.** To generate XML documents from relational data in an XML collection.

**condition.** A specification of either the criteria for selecting XML data or the way to join the XML collection tables.

**DAD.** See *Document access definition*.

**data interchange.** The sharing of data between applications. XML supports data interchange without needing to go through the process of first transforming data from a proprietary format.

**data source.** A local or remote relational or nonrelational data manager that is capable of supporting data access via an ODBC driver that supports the ODBC APIs.

**data stream.** Information returned by an API function, comprising text (at least one paragraph) containing the term searched for, and information for highlighting the found term in that text.

**data type.** An attribute of columns and literals.

**database partition.** A part of the database that consists of its own user data, indexes, configuration files, and transaction logs. Sometimes called a node or database node.

**database partition server.** Manages a *database partition*. A database partition server is composed of a database manager and the collection of data and system resources that it manages. Typically, one database partition server is assigned to each system.

**DBCLOB.** Double-byte character large object.

**DBCS.** Double-byte character support.

**decompose.** Separates XML documents into a collection of relational tables in an XML collection.

**default casting function.** Casts the SQL base type to a UDT.

**default view.** A representation of data in which an XML table and all of its related side tables are joined.

**disable.** To restore a database or column to its condition before it was enabled for XML Extender by removing the items created during the enabling process.

**distinct type.** See *user-defined type*.

**document.** See *text document*.

**Document Access Definition (DAD).** An XML document used to define the indexing scheme for an XML column or mapping scheme of an XML collection. It can be used to enable an XML Extender column or an XML collection.

**Document type definition (DTD).** A set of declarations for XML elements and attributes. The DTD defines what elements are used in the XML document, in what order they can be used, and which elements can contain other elements. You can associate a DTD with a document access definition (DAD) file to validate XML documents.

**double-byte character large object (DBCLOB).** A character string of double-byte characters, or a combination of single-byte and double-byte characters, where the string can be up to 2 GB. DBCLOBs have an associated code page. Text objects that include double-byte characters are stored in a DB2 database as DBCLOBs.

**DTD.** See *Document type definition*.

**DTD reference table (DTD\_REF table).** A table that contains DTDs used to validate XML documents. Users can insert their own DTDs into the DTD\_REF table. This table is created when a database is enabled for XML.

**DTD\_REF table.** DTD reference table.

**DTD repository.** A DB2 database table, called DTD\_REF, where each row of the table represents a DTD with additional metadata information.

**EDI.** Electronic Data Interchange.

**Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).** A standard for electronic data interchange for business-to-business (B2B) applications.

**element.** See *XML element*.

**element\_node.** A representation of an element. An `element_node` can be the root element or a child element.

**embedded SQL.** SQL statements coded within an application program. See *static SQL*.

**enable.** To prepare a database or a column for use by XML Extender.

**escape character.** A character indicating that the subsequent character is not to be interpreted as a *masking character*.

**Extensible Stylesheet Language (XSL).** A language used to express stylesheets. XSL consists of two parts: a language for transforming XML documents, and an XML vocabulary for specifying formatting semantics.

**Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation (XSLT).** XSLT is a utility with which you apply XSL stylesheets to XML documents, transforming the source XML documents to HTML, text, or other XML document types.

**external file.** A file that exists in a file system external to DB2.

**file reference variable.** A programming variable that is useful for moving a LOB to and from a file on a client workstation.

**foreign key.** A key that is part of the definition of a referential constraint and that consists of one or more columns of a dependent table.

**gigabyte (GB).** One billion ( $10^9$ ) bytes. When referring to memory capacity, 1 073 741 824 bytes.

**host variable.** A variable in an application program that can be referred to in embedded SQL statements. Host variables are the primary mechanism for transmitting data between a database and application program work areas.

**Java Database Connectivity (JDBC).** An application programming interface (API) that has the same characteristics as Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) but is specifically designed for use by Java database applications. Also, for databases that do not have a JDBC driver, JDBC includes a JDBC to ODBC bridge, which is a mechanism for converting JDBC to ODBC; JDBC presents the JDBC API to Java database applications and converts this to ODBC. JDBC was developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. and various partners and vendors.

**JDBC.** Java Database Connectivity.

**join.** A relational operation that allows for retrieval of data from two or more tables based on matching column values.

**joined view.** A DB2 database view created by the "CREATE VIEW" statement which join one more tables together.

**kilobyte (KB).** One thousand ( $10^3$ ) bytes. When referring to memory capacity, 1024 bytes.

**large object (LOB).** A sequence of bytes, where the length can be up to 2 GB. A LOB can be of three types: *binary large object (BLOB)*, *character large object (CLOB)*, or *double-byte character large object (DBCLOB)*.

**LOB.** Large object.

**LOB locator.** A small (4-byte) value stored in a host variable that can be used in a program to refer to a much larger LOB in a DB2 database. Using a LOB locator, a user can manipulate the LOB as if it was stored in a regular host variable, and without the need to transport the LOB between the application on the client system and the database server.

**location path.** Location path is a sequence of XML tags that identify an XML element or attribute. The location path identifies the structure of the XML document, indicating the context for the element or attribute. A single slash (/) path indicates that the context is the whole document. The location path is used in the extracting UDFs to identify the elements and attributes to be extracted. The location path is also used in the DAD file to specify the mapping between an XML element, or attribute, and a DB2 database column when defining the indexing scheme for XML column.

**locator.** A pointer which can be used to locate an object. In DB2, the large object block (LOB) locator is the data type which locates LOBs.

**mapping scheme.** A definition of how XML data is represented in a relational database. The mapping scheme is specified in the DAD. The XML Extender provides two types of mapping schemes: *SQL mapping* and *relational database node (RDB\_node) mapping*.

**megabyte (MB).** One million (10<sup>6</sup>) bytes. When referring to memory capacity, 1 048 576 bytes.

**metadata table.** See *administrative support table*.

**multiple occurrence.** An indication of whether an element can occur more than once in a document. Multiple occurrence is specified in the DAD.

**object.** In object-oriented programming, an abstraction consisting of data and the operations associated with that data.

**ODBC.** Open Database Connectivity.

**Open Database Connectivity.** A standard application programming interface (API) for accessing data in both relational and nonrelational database management systems. Using this API, database applications can access data stored in database management systems on a variety of computers even if each database management system uses a different data storage format and programming interface. ODBC is based on the call level interface (CLI) specification of the X/Open SQL Access Group and was developed by Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC), Lotus, Microsoft, and Sybase. Contrast with *Java Database Connectivity*.

**overloaded function.** A function name for which multiple function instances exist.

**path expression.** See *location path*.

**predicate.** An element of a search condition that expresses or implies a comparison operation.

**primary key.** A unique key that is part of the definition of a table. A primary key is the default parent key of a referential constraint definition.

**procedure.** See *stored procedure*.

**RDB\_node.** Relational database node.

**RDB\_node mapping.** The location of the content of an XML element, or the value of an XML attribute, which are defined by the RDB\_node. The XML Extender uses this mapping to determine where to store or retrieve the XML data.

**relational database node (RDB\_node).** A node that contains one or more element definitions for tables, optional columns, and optional conditions. The tables and columns are used to define how the XML data is stored in the database. The condition specifies either the criteria for selecting XML data or the way to join the XML collection tables.

**result set.** A set of rows returned by a stored procedure.

**result table.** A table which contains rows as the result of an SQL query or an execution of a stored procedure.

**root element.** The top element of an XML document.

**root ID.** A unique identifier that associates all side tables with the application table.

**SBCS.** Single-byte character support.

**scalar function.** An SQL operation that produces a single value from another value and is expressed as a function name, followed by a list of arguments enclosed in parentheses.

**schema.** A collection of database objects such as tables, views, indexes, or triggers. It provides a logical classification of database objects.



**search argument.** The conditions specified when making a search, consisting of one or several search terms, and search parameters.

**section search.** Provides the text search within a section which can be defined by the application. To support the structural text search, a section can be defined by the XPath's abbreviated location path.

**side table.** Additional tables created by the XML Extender to improve performance when searching elements or attributes in an XML column.

**simple location path.** A sequence of element type names connected by a single slash (/).

**SQL mapping.** A definition of the relationship of the content of an XML element or value of an XML attribute with relational data, using one or more SQL statements and the XSLT data model. The XML Extender uses the definition to determine where to store or retrieve the XML data. SQL mapping is defined with the `SQL_stmt` element in the DAD.

**static SQL.** SQL statements that are embedded within a program, and are prepared during the program preparation process before the program is executed. After being prepared, a static SQL statement does not change, although values of host variables specified by the statement might change.

**stored procedure.** A block of procedural constructs and embedded SQL statements that is stored in a database and can be called by name. Stored procedures allow an application program to be run in two parts. One part runs on the client and the other part runs on the server. This allows one call to produce several accesses to the database.

**structural text index.** To index text keys based on the tree structure of the XML document, using the IBM DB2 Net Search Extender.

**subquery.** A full SELECT statement that is used within a search condition of an SQL statement.

**table space.** An abstraction of a collection of containers into which database objects are stored. A table space provides a level of indirection between a database and the tables stored within the database. A table space:

- Has space on media storage devices assigned to it.
- Has tables created within it. These tables will consume space in the containers that belong to the table space. The data, index, long field, and LOB portions of a table can be stored in the same table space, or can be individually broken out into separate table spaces.

**terabyte.** A trillion ( $10^{12}$ ) bytes. Ten to the twelfth power bytes. When referring to memory capacity, 1 099 511 627 776 bytes.

**text\_node.** A representation of the CDATA text of an element.

**top element\_node.** A representation of the root element of the XML document in the DAD.

**tracing.** The action of storing information in a file that can later be used in finding the cause of an error.

**trigger.** The definition of a set of actions to be taken when a table is changed. Triggers can be used to perform actions such as validating input data, automatically generating a value for a newly inserted row, reading from other tables for cross-referencing purposes, or writing to other tables for auditing purposes. Triggers are often used for integrity checking or to enforce business rules.

**UDF.** See *user-defined function*.

**UDT.** See *user-defined type*.

**uniform resource locator (URL).** An address that names an HTTP server and optionally a directory and file name, for example: <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/extenders>.

**UNION.** An SQL operation that combines the results of two select statements. UNION is often used to merge lists of values that are obtained from several tables.

**URL.** Uniform resource locator.

**user-defined distinct type (UDT).** A data type created by a user of DB2, in contrast to a data type provided by DB2 database such as LONG VARCHAR.

**user-defined function (UDF).** A function that is defined by a user to DB2. Once defined, the function can be used in SQL queries. and video objects. For example, UDFs can be created to get the compression format of a video or return the sampling rate of an audio. This provides a way of defining the behavior of objects of a particular type.

**user-defined function (UDF).** An SQL function created by a user of DB2, in contrast to an SQL function provided by DB2.

**user-defined type (UDT).** A data type that is defined by a user to DB2. UDTs are used to differentiate one LOB from another. For example, one UDT can be created for image objects and another for audio objects. Though stored as BLOBs, the image and audio objects are treated as types distinct from BLOBs and distinct from each other.

**user-defined function (UDF).** A function that is defined to the database management system and can be referenced thereafter in SQL queries. It can be one of the following functions:

- An external function, in which the body of the function is written in a programming language whose arguments are scalar values, and a scalar result is produced for each invocation.
- A sourced function, implemented by another built-in or user-defined function that is already known to the DBMS. This function can be either a scalar function or column (aggregating) function, and returns a single value from a set of values (for example, MAX or AVG).

**user-defined type (UDT).** A data type that is not native to the database manager and was created by a user. See *distinct type*.

**user table.** A table that is created for and used by an application.

**validation.** The process of using a DTD to ensure that the XML document is valid and to allow structured searches on XML data. The DTD is stored in the DTD repository.

**valid document.** An XML document that has an associated DTD. To be valid, the XML document cannot violate the syntactic rules specified in its DTD.

**video.** Pertaining to the portion of recorded information that can be seen.

**video clip.** A section of filmed or videotaped material.

**video index.** A file that the Video Extender uses to find a specific *shot* or frame in a video clip.

**Web browser.** A client program that initiates requests to a Web server and displays the information that the server returns.

**well-formed document.** A document that matches the production labeled document, meets all the well-formedness constraints given in the w3.org specification, and each of the parsed entities which is referenced directly or indirectly within the document is well-formed.

**wildcard character.** See *masking character*.

**XML.** eXtensible Markup Language.

**XML attribute.** Any attribute specified by the ATTLIST under the XML element in the DTD or XML Schema. The XML Extender uses the location path to identify an attribute.

**XML collection.** A collection of relation tables which presents the data to compose XML documents, or to be decomposed from XML documents.

**XML column.** A column in the application table that has been enabled for XML Extender.

**XML element.** Any XML tag or ELEMENT as specified in the XML DTD or XML schema. The XML Extender uses the location path to identify an element.

**XML object.** Equivalent to an XML document.

**XPath.** (XML Path Language) A language for addressing parts of an XML document. XML Path Language is designed to be used by XSLT. Every location path can be expressed using the syntax defined for XPath.

**XML table.** An application table which includes one or more XML Extender columns.

**XML tag.** Any valid XML markup language tag, mainly the XML element. The terms tag and element are used interchangeably.

**XML UDF.** A DB2 database user-defined function provided by the XML Extender.

**XML UDT.** A DB2 database user-defined type provided by the XML Extender.

**XPath.** A language for addressing parts of an XML document.

**XPath data model.** The tree structure used to model and navigate an XML document using nodes.

**XSL.** Extensible Stylesheet Language.

**XSLT.** Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation.



# Index

## A

- access and storage method
  - choosing an 42
  - planning 42
  - XML collections 46, 47, 171
  - XML columns 46, 47, 171
- access method
  - choosing an 42
  - introduction 5
  - planning an 42
  - XML collections 93
  - XML column 77
- adding
  - nodes 70
- administration
  - dxxadm command 127
  - in iSeries environment 35, 39
  - support tables
    - DTD\_REF 215
    - XML\_USAGE 215
  - tools 42
- administration stored procedures
  - dxxDisableCollection() 192
  - dxxDisableColumn() 191
  - dxxDisableDB() 189
  - dxxEnableCollection() 192
  - dxxEnableColumn() 190
  - dxxEnableDB() 188
- administrative support tables
  - DTD\_REF 215
  - XML\_USAGE 215
- attribute\_node 47, 55, 110, 171

## B

- B-tree indexing 79
- binding
  - stored procedures 187

## C

- c header files 35
- casting function
  - retrieval 82, 143
  - storage 80, 140
  - update 86, 159
- CCSID (coded character set identifier)
  - declare in USS 94, 98, 249
- client code page 249
- code pages
  - client 249
  - configuring locale settings 249
  - consistent encoding in USS 249
  - consistent encodings and declarations 249
  - conversion
    - scenarios 249
  - data loss 249
  - database 249
  - DB2 assumptions 249

- code pages (*continued*)
  - DB2CODEPAGE registry variable 249
  - declaring an encoding 249
  - document encoding consistency 249
  - encoding declaration 249
  - exporting documents 249
  - importing documents 249
  - legal encoding declarations 249
  - line endings 249
  - preventing inconsistent documents 249
  - server 249
  - supported encoding declarations 249
  - terminology 249
  - UDFs and stored procedures 249
  - Windows NT UTF-8 limitation 249
  - XML Extender assumptions 249
- column data
  - available UDTs 44
- column type, for decomposition 54
- column types
  - decomposition 110
- command options
  - disable\_collection 132
  - disable\_column 130
  - disable\_db 128
  - enable\_collection 131
  - enable\_column 129
  - enable\_db 128
- complexType element 121
- composing XML documents 17
- composite key
  - for decomposition 53
  - XML collections 53
- composite keys
  - for decomposition 110
  - XML collections 110
- composition
  - dxxGenXML() 94
  - dxxRetrieveXML() 94
  - overriding the DAD file 179
  - stored procedures
    - dxxGenXML() 17, 193, 200
    - dxxRetrieveXML() 197, 202
  - XML collection 94
- conditions
  - optional 53
  - RDB\_node mapping 52, 110
  - SQL mapping 49, 52, 106, 108
- consistent documents 249
- Content() function
  - for retrieval 82
  - retrieval functions using 143
  - XMLFile to a CLOB 143
- conversions
  - code pages 249
- creating
  - nodes 70
  - XML tables 56
- current schema 118

## D

- DAD
  - node definitions
    - RDB\_node 52
- DAD (Document Access Definition) file
  - attribute\_node 171
  - bind step for USS encodings 249
  - CCSIDs in USS 94, 98, 249
  - creating for XML collections 66
  - declaring the encoding 249
  - DTD for the 174
  - editing for XML collections 66
  - element\_node 110, 171
  - examples 241
  - for XML columns 169, 171
  - introduction 5
  - node definitions 171
  - overriding 179
  - RDB\_node 110
  - root element\_node 110
  - root\_node 171
  - samples 241
  - size limit 171, 251
  - text\_node 171
- DAD file
  - attribute\_node 47
  - element\_node 47, 52
  - for XML columns 45, 46
  - node definitions
    - attribute\_node 47
    - element\_node 47
    - root\_node 47
    - text\_node 47
  - planning for the 45, 46
    - XML collections 46
    - XML column 46
  - RDB\_node 52
  - root element\_node 52
  - root\_node 47
  - size limit 45, 46
  - text\_node 47
- data loss, inconsistent encodings 249
- database
  - relational 48
- databases
  - code page 249
  - enabling for XML 55
  - relational 106
- DB2CODEPAGE
  - registry variable 249
- DB2XML 215
  - DTD\_REF table schema 215
  - schema for stored procedures 93
  - schema for UDFs and UDTs 140
  - XML\_USAGE table schema 215
- decomposing an XML collection
  - collection table limit 251
  - composite key 110
  - DB2 table sizes 98
  - dxxInsertXML() 98

- decomposing an XML collection
    - (*continued*)
    - dxxShredXML() 98
    - of XML collections 98
    - specifying the column type for 110
    - specifying the orderBy attribute 110
    - specifying the primary key for 110
    - stored procedures
      - dxxInsertXML() 206
      - dxxShredXML() 204
    - using RDB\_node mapping 70
  - decomposition
    - composite key 53
    - specifying the column type for 54
    - specifying the orderBy attribute 53
    - specifying the primary key for 53
  - deleting
    - nodes 70
    - XML collections 103
  - disable\_collection command 132
  - disable\_column command 130
  - disable\_db command 128
  - disable\_db option
    - dxxadm command 128
  - disabling
    - administration command 127
    - databases for XML, stored procedure 189
    - disable\_collection command 132
    - disable\_column command 130
    - disable\_db command 128
    - stored procedure 189, 191, 192
    - XML collections 117
    - stored procedure 192
    - XML columns
      - stored procedure 191
  - disabling a database 128
  - DLTLICPGM command 128
  - document encoding declaration 249
  - document structure, maintaining 77
  - document type definition 57
  - DTD
    - availability 4
    - for getting started lessons 17
    - for the DAD 174
    - planning 17
    - publication 4
    - repository
      - DTD\_REF 5, 215
      - storing in 57
    - using multiple 46, 55
  - DTD\_REF table 57
    - column limits 251
    - inserting a DTD 57
    - schema 215
  - DTDID 215
  - DVALIDATE 164
  - DXX\_SEQNO for multiple occurrence 61
  - dxxadm
    - disable\_dp option 128
  - dxxadm command
    - disable\_collection command 132
    - disable\_column command 130
    - disable\_db command 128
    - enable\_collection command 131
    - enable\_column command 129
    - enable\_db command 128
  - dxxadm command (*continued*)
    - introduction to 127
    - syntax 127
  - dxxDisableCollection() stored procedure 192
  - dxxDisableColumn() stored procedure 191
  - dxxDisableDB() stored procedure 189
  - dxxEnableCollection() stored procedure 192
  - dxxEnableColumn() stored procedure 190
  - dxxEnableDB() stored procedure 188
  - dxxGenXML() 17
  - dxxGenXML() stored procedure 94, 193, 200
  - dxxInsertXML() stored procedure 98, 206
  - dxxRetrieveXML() stored procedure 94, 197, 202
  - DXXROOT\_ID 79
  - dxxsamples 40
  - dxxShredXML() stored procedure 98, 204
  - dxxtrc command 217, 218
  - dynamically overriding the DAD file, composition 179
- E**
- element\_node 47, 53, 110, 171
  - enable\_collection keyword 131
  - enable\_column keyword 129
  - enable\_db keyword
    - creating XML\_USAGE table 215
    - option 128
  - enabling
    - XML collections 116
  - encoding
    - CCSID declarations in USS 94, 98, 249
    - XML documents 249
  - existing DB2 data 93
  - Extensible Markup Language (XML)
    - in XML documents 3
  - extractChar() function 152
  - extractChars() function 152
  - extractCLOB() function 154
  - extractCLOBs() function 154
  - extractDate() function 155
  - extractDates() function 155
  - extractDouble() function 150
  - extractDoubles() function 150
  - extracting functions
    - description 139
    - extractChar() 152
    - extractChars() 152
    - extractCLOB() 154
    - extractCLOBs() 154
    - extractDate() 155
    - extractDates() 155
    - extractDouble() 150
    - extractDoubles() 150
    - extractReal() 151
    - extractReals() 151
    - extractSmallint() 149
    - extractSmallints() 149
  - extracting functions (*continued*)
    - extractTime() 157
    - extractTimes() 157
    - extractTimestamp() 158
    - extractTimestamps() 158
    - extractVarchar() 153
    - extractVarchars() 153
    - introduction to 147
    - table of 82
  - extractReal() function 151
  - extractReals() function 151
  - extractSmallint() function 149
  - extractSmallints() function 149
  - extractTime() function 157
  - extractTimes() function 157
  - extractTimestamp() function 158
  - extractTimestamps() function 158
  - extractVarchar() function 153
  - extractVarchars() function 153
- F**
- FROM clause 52
    - SQL mapping 108
  - function path
    - adding DB2XML schema 140
  - functions
    - casting 80, 82, 86
    - Content(): from XMLFILE to CLOB 143
    - extractChar() 152
    - extractChars() 152
    - extractCLOB() 154
    - extractCLOBs() 154
    - extractDate() 155
    - extractDates() 155
    - extractDouble() 150
    - extractDoubles() 150
    - extracting 147
    - extractReal() 151
    - extractReals() 151
    - extractSmallint() 149
    - extractSmallints() 149
    - extractTime() 157
    - extractTimes() 157
    - extractTimestamp() 158
    - extractTimestamps() 158
    - extractVarchar() 153
    - extractVarchars() 153
    - generate\_unique 139, 164
    - limitations when invoking from JDBC 90
    - limits 251
    - retrieval
      - description 139
      - from external storage to memory pointer 143
      - from internal storage to external server file 143
      - introduction 143
      - XML data 82
    - storage 80, 139, 140
    - update 86, 139, 159
    - XML columns 139
    - XMLCLOBFromFile() 140
    - XMLFile to a CLOB 143
    - XMLFileFromCLOB() 140, 141

functions (*continued*)  
XMLFileFromVarchar() 140, 141  
XMLVarcharFromFile() 140, 142

## G

GENERATE\_UNIQUE function  
introduction 164

## H

header files 35  
highlighting conventions ix

## I

importing  
DTD 57  
include files  
for stored procedures 187  
inconsistent  
document 249  
indexing 79  
side tables 62, 79  
structural-text 79  
XML columns 79  
XML documents 79  
Information Center, including this book  
in ix  
installing  
the 36  
iSeries Navigator  
running SQL scripts 41  
setting up 41

## J

Java database connectivity (JDBC)  
limitations when invoking UDFs 90  
JDBC (Java database connectivity)  
limitations when invoking UDFs 90  
join conditions  
RDB\_node mapping 52, 110  
SQL mapping 52, 108

## L

limits  
stored procedure parameters 94, 215  
XML Extender 251  
line  
endings, code page  
considerations 249  
locales  
settings 249  
location path  
introduction 113  
syntax 114  
XPath 5  
XSL 5

## M

maintaining  
document structure 77  
mapping scheme  
determining RDB\_node mapping 50, 106  
determining SQL mapping 49, 106  
figure of DAD file 42  
figure of DAD for the 43  
for XML collections 42, 43  
for XML columns 42, 43  
FROM clause 52, 108  
introduction 93  
ORDER BY clause 52, 108  
RDB\_node mapping  
requirements 52, 53, 110  
requirements 51  
SELECT clause 51, 108  
SQL mapping requirements 51, 108  
SQL mapping scheme 51, 106  
SQL\_stmt 48, 106  
WHERE clause 52, 108  
messages  
XML 224  
migrating  
data from SYSBAS to IASP for  
iSeries 37  
IASP considerations for iSeries 37  
XML Extender to Version 8 37  
multiple DTDs  
XML collections 46  
XML columns 55  
multiple occurrence  
affecting table size 98  
deleting elements and attributes 103  
DXX\_SEQNO 61  
one column per side table 61  
order of elements and attributes 98  
orderBy attribute 53, 110  
preserving the order of elements and  
attributes 103  
recomposing documents with 53, 110  
searching elements and attributes 88  
updating collections 103  
updating elements and attributes 86,  
103, 159  
updating XML documents 86, 159  
multiple-occurrence attribute 17

## N

nodes  
adding 70  
attribute\_node 47, 171  
creating 70  
DAD file configuration 17, 63, 66, 70  
deleting 70  
element\_node 47, 171  
RDB\_node 52, 110  
removing 70  
root\_node 47, 171  
text\_node 47, 171  
nonamespacelocation 55

## O

operating environment, iSeries 35  
operating systems  
supported by DB2 3  
Operations Navigator  
starting the trace 217  
stopping the trace 218  
ORDER BY clause 52  
SQL mapping 108  
orderBy attribute  
for decomposition 53, 110  
for multiple occurrence 53, 110  
XML collections 53, 110  
overloaded function  
Content() 143  
overrideType  
No override 179  
SQL override 179  
XML override 179  
overriding  
DAD file 179

## P

parameter markers in functions 90  
performance  
indexing side tables 79  
searching XML documents 79  
stopping the trace 218  
planning  
a mapping scheme 48  
access methods 42  
choosing to validate XML data 46  
DAD 171  
determining column UDT 44  
DTD 17  
for the DAD 45, 46  
for XML collections 46  
for XML columns 44, 45  
how to search XML column data 45  
indexing XML columns 79  
mapping schemes 106  
mapping XML document and  
database 17  
side tables 61  
storage methods 42  
the XML collections mapping  
scheme 48  
validating with multiple DTDs 46, 55  
XML collections 171  
XML collections mapping  
scheme 106  
primary key for decomposition 53  
primary keys  
decomposition 110  
side tables 79  
problem determination 217  
processing instructions 113, 171

## R

RDB\_node mapping  
composite key for decomposition 53  
conditions 52  
decomposition requirements 53  
determining for XML collections 50

- RDB\_node mapping (*continued*)
  - requirements 52, 110
  - specifying column type for decomposition 54
- registry variables
  - DB2CODEPAGE 249
- removing
  - nodes 70
- repository, DTD 57
- retrieval functions
  - Content() 143
  - description of 139
  - from external storage to memory pointer 143
  - from internal storage to external server file 143
  - introduction to 143
  - XMLFile to a CLOB 143
- retrieving data
  - attribute values 82
- return codes
  - stored procedures 219
  - UDF 219
- ROOT ID
  - indexing considerations 79
- root\_node 47, 171

## S

- samples
  - creating
    - XML 17
  - document access definition (DAD) files 241
  - getstart.xml sample XML document 241
- samples files, unpack and restore 39
- schema
  - current 118
  - default 118
- schema names
  - for stored procedures 93
- schema, creating 40
- schemabindings 55
- schemas
  - DB2XML 55, 140
  - DTD\_REF table 57, 215
  - validating using 55
  - XML\_USAGE table 215
- searching
  - XML documents
    - by structure 88
    - using DB2 Text Extender 88
- SELECT clause 51, 108
- server code page 249
- side tables
  - indexing 62, 79
  - planning 61
  - searching 88
  - updating 86
- size limits
  - stored procedures 94, 215
  - XML Extender 251
- software requirements
  - XML Extender 36
- SQL mapping 63
  - creating a DAD file 17

- SQL mapping (*continued*)
  - determining for XML collections 49, 106
  - FROM clause 52
  - ORDER BY clause 52
  - requirements 51, 108
  - SELECT clause 51
  - SQL mapping scheme 51
  - WHERE clause 52
- SQL override 179
- SQL\_stmt
  - FROM clause 52, 108
  - ORDER\_BY clause 52, 108
  - SELECT clause 51, 108
  - WHERE clause 52, 108
- starting
  - XML Extender 36
- storage
  - functions
    - description 139
    - introduction 140
    - storage UDF table 80
    - XMLCLOBFromFile() 140
    - XMLFileFromCLOB() 140, 141
    - XMLFileFromVarchar() 140, 141
    - XMLVarcharFromFile() 140, 142
  - methods
    - choosing 42
    - introduction 5
    - planning 42
    - XML collections 93
    - XML column 77
- storage UDFs 80, 86
- stored procedures
  - administration
    - dxxDisableCollection() 192
    - dxxDisableColumn() 191
    - dxxDisableDB() 189
    - dxxEnableCollection() 192
    - dxxEnableColumn() 190
    - dxxEnableDB() 188
    - XML Extender, list 188
  - binding 187
  - calling
    - XML Extender 187
  - code page considerations 249
  - composition
    - dxxGenXML() 193, 200
    - dxxRetrieveXML() 197, 202
    - XML Extenders 193
  - decomposition
    - dxxInsertXML() 206
    - dxxShredXML() 204
    - XML Extenders 204
  - dxxDisableCollection() 192
  - dxxDisableColumn() 191
  - dxxDisableDB() 189
  - dxxEnableCollection() 192
  - dxxEnableColumn() 190
  - dxxEnableDB() 188
  - dxxGenXML() 17, 94, 193, 200
  - dxxInsertXML() 98, 206
  - dxxRetrieveXML() 94, 197, 202
  - dxxShredXML() 98, 204
  - include files 187
  - initializing
    - DXXGPREP 187

- stored procedures (*continued*)
  - return codes 219
  - XML Extender 187
- storing the DTD 57
- storing XML data 80
- structure
  - DTD 17
  - hierarchical 17
  - mapping 17
  - relational tables 17
  - XML document 17
- stylesheets 113, 171
- SVALIDATE 164
- syntax
  - disable\_collection command 132
  - disable\_column command 130
  - disable\_db command 128
  - dxxadm 127
  - enable\_collection command 131
  - enable\_column command 129
  - enable\_db command 128
  - extractChar() function 152
  - extractChars() function 152
  - extractCLOB() function 154
  - extractCLOBs() function 154
  - extractDate() function 155
  - extractDates() function 155
  - extractDouble() function 150
  - extractDoubles() function 150
  - extractInteger() function 148
  - extractIntegers() function 148
  - extractReal() function 151
  - extractReals() function 151
  - extractSmallint() function 149
  - extractSmallints() function 149
  - extractTime() function 157
  - extractTimes() function 157
  - extractTimestamp() function 158
  - extractTimestamps() function 158
  - extractVarchar() function 153
  - extractVarchars() function 153
  - generate\_unique() function 164
  - location path 114
  - Update() function 159
  - XMLCLOBFromFile() function 140
  - XMLFile to a CLOB Content() function 143
  - XMLFileFromCLOB() function 140, 141
  - XMLFileFromVarchar() function 140, 141
  - XMLVarcharFromFile() function 142

## T

- tables 98
- text\_node 47, 55, 110, 171
- traces
  - starting 217
  - stopping 218
- transfer of documents between client and server, considerations 249
- transforming XML to HTML
  - XSLTransformToCLOB 210
  - XSLTransformToFile 211
- troubleshooting
  - stored procedure return codes 219



troubleshooting (*continued*)  
strategies 217  
UDF return codes 219

## U

UDFs (user-defined functions)  
code page considerations 249  
DVALIDATE() 164  
extractChar() 152  
extractChars() 152  
extractCLOB() 154  
extractCLOBs() 154  
extractDate() 155  
extractDates() 155  
extractDouble() 150  
extractDoubles() 150  
extracting functions 147  
extractReal() 151  
extractReals() 151  
extractSmallint() 149  
extractSmallints() 149  
extractTime() 157  
extractTimes() 157  
extractTimestamp() 158  
extractTimestamps() 158  
extractVarchar() 153  
extractVarchars() 153  
for XML columns 139  
from external storage to memory  
pointer 143  
from internal storage to external  
server file 143  
generate\_unique() 164  
retrieval functions 143  
return codes 219  
searching with 88  
storage 86  
SVALIDATE() 164  
Update() 86, 159  
XMLCLOBFromFile() 140  
XMLFile to a CLOB 143  
XMLFileFromCLOB() 140, 141  
XMLFileFromVarchar() 140, 141  
XMLVarcharFromFile() 140, 142  
UDTs  
summary table of 44  
XMLCLOB 44  
XMLFILE 44  
XMLVARCHAR 44  
unique key column, generating 164  
unpack and restore sample files 39  
Update() function  
document replacement behavior 159  
introduction 159  
XML 86, 139  
updates  
side tables 86  
XML collection 103  
XML column data  
attributes 86  
description 86  
entire document 86  
multiple occurrence 159  
specific elements 86  
XML document replacement by  
Update() UDF 159

user-defined functions (UDFs)  
for XML columns 139  
generate\_unique() 164  
searching with 88  
Update() 86, 159  
user-defined types (UDTs)  
for XML columns 77  
XML 137  
XMLCLOB 77  
XMLFILE 77  
XMLVARCHAR 77

## V

validate XML data  
considerations 46  
deciding to 46  
DTD requirements 46  
validating  
performance impact 46  
using schemas 55  
XML DTDs 57

## W

WHERE clause 52  
requirements for SQL mapping 108  
Windows  
UTF-8 limitation, code pages  
Windows NT 249

## X

XML  
data, storing 80  
override 179  
repository 42  
tables, creating 56  
XML collections  
composition 94  
creating the DAD (command line) 66  
DAD file, planning for 46  
decomposing using RDB\_node  
mapping 70  
decomposition 98  
definition 5  
determining a mapping scheme 106  
determining a mapping scheme  
for 48  
disabling 117  
DTD for validation 57  
editing the DAD (command line) 66  
enabling 116  
introduction 93  
mapping scheme 48  
mapping schemes 49, 106  
RDB\_node mapping 50, 106  
scenarios 44  
SQL mapping 49, 106  
storage and access methods 5, 93  
validation 57  
when to use 44  
XML columns  
creating a DAD file for 169  
DAD file, planning for 46  
defining and enabling 78

XML columns (*continued*)  
definition 5  
determining column UDT 44  
elements and attributes to be  
searched 45  
figure of side tables 61  
indexing 79  
introduction 77  
location path 113  
maintaining document structure 77  
planning 44  
retrieving data  
attribute values 82  
element contents 82  
entire document 82  
retrieving XML data 82  
sample DAD file 241  
scenarios 44  
storage and access methods 5, 77  
the DAD for 45  
UDFs 139  
updating XML data  
attributes 86  
entire document 86  
specific elements 86  
when to use 44  
with side tables 79  
XML documents  
B-tree indexing 79  
code page assumptions 249  
code page consistency 249  
code page conversion, exporting 249  
code page conversion, importing 249  
composing 17, 94  
decomposition 98  
deleting 90  
encoding declarations 249  
indexing 79  
introduction 3  
legal encoding declarations 249  
mapping to tables 17  
searching  
direct query on side tables 88  
document structure 88  
from a joined view 88  
multiple occurrence 88  
structural text 88  
with extracting UDFs 88  
stored in DB2 3  
supported encoding declarations 249  
XML DTD repository  
description 5  
DTD Reference Table (DTD\_REF) 5  
XML Extender  
available operating systems 3  
functions 139  
introduction 3  
stored procedures 187  
XML operating environment on  
iSeries 35  
XML Path Language 5  
XML schemas  
advantages 121  
example 123  
validating 164  
XML Toolkit for z/OS 6  
XML\_USAGE table 215

XMLClobFromFile() function 140  
XMLFile to a CLOB function 143  
XMLFileFromCLOB() function 140, 141  
XMLFileFromVarchar() function 140, 141  
XMLVarcharFromFile() function 140, 142  
XPath 5  
XSLT 49, 106  
    using 17  
XSLTransformTOClob() 210  
XSLTransformToFile 211

---

## Notices

IBM® may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in all countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing  
IBM Corporation  
North Castle Drive  
Armonk, NY 10504-1785  
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country/region or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation  
Licensing  
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku  
Tokyo 106, Japan

**The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country/region where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:**  
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product, and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information that has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Canada Limited  
Office of the Lab Director  
8200 Warden Avenue  
Markham, Ontario  
L6G 1C7  
CANADA

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems, and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements, or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility, or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information may contain examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious, and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

#### COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information may contain sample application programs, in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. *\_enter the year or years\_*. All rights reserved.

---

## Trademarks

Company, product, or service names identified in the documents of the DB2® Version 9 documentation library may be trademarks or service marks of International Business Machines Corporation or other companies. Information on the trademarks of IBM Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both is located at <http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml>.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of other companies and have been used in at least one of the documents in the DB2 documentation library:

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel®, Itanium®, Pentium®, and Xeon® are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java™ and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux® is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.







Program Number: 5761-DE1

Printed in USA

SC23-7691-00





Spine information:



IBM DB2 for i5/OS

Administration and Programming for i5/OS

Version 9.1